Part I: Engagement and Quality Control Standards

SA 600

Using the Work of Another Auditor

*(Effective for all audits relating to accounting periods beginning on or after April 1, 2002)*

Introduction

1. The Standard on Auditing (SA) 200, “Basic Principles Governing an Audit”, states (paragraph 9):

   “When the auditor delegates work to assistants or uses work performed by other auditors and experts, he will continue to be responsible for forming and expressing his opinion on the financial information. However, he will be entitled to rely on work performed by others, provided he exercises adequate skill and care and is not aware of any reason to believe that he should not have so relied. In the case of any independent statutory appointment to perform the work on which the auditor has to rely in forming his opinion, such as in the case of the work of branch auditors appointed under the Companies Act, 1956 the auditor’s report should expressly state the fact of such reliance.”

2. The purpose of this Standard on Auditing (SA) is to establish standards to be applied in situations where an auditor (referred to herein as the “principal auditor”), reporting on the financial information of an entity, uses the work of another auditor (referred to herein as the ‘other auditor’) with respect to the financial information of one or more components included in the financial information of the entity. This Standard also discusses the principal auditor’s responsibility in relation to his use of the work of the other auditor. In this Standard, the term ‘financial information’ encompasses ‘financial statements’.

3. This Standard does not deal with those instances where two or more auditors are appointed as joint auditors\(^1\) nor does it deal with the auditor’s relationship with a predecessor auditor.

4. When the principal auditor concludes that the financial information of a component is immaterial, the procedures outlined in this Statement do not apply. When several components, immaterial in themselves, are together material in relation to the financial information of the entity as a whole, the procedures outlined in this Statement should be considered.

5. **When the principal auditor uses the work of another auditor, the principal auditor should determine how the work of the other auditor will affect the audit.**

6. “Principal auditor” means the auditor with responsibility for reporting on the financial information of an entity when that financial information includes the financial information of one or more components audited by another auditor.

7. “Other auditor” means an auditor, other than the principal auditor, with responsibility for reporting on the financial information of a component which is included in the financial information audited by the principal auditor.

\(^1\) Standard on Auditing (SA) 299, “Responsibility of Joint Auditors”, deals with the audit procedures to be employed where two or more auditors are appointed as joint auditors.
I.422 Auditing Pronouncements

8. "Component" means a division, branch, subsidiary, joint venture, associated enterprises or other entity whose financial information is included in the financial information audited by the principal auditor.

Acceptance as Principal Auditor

9. The auditor should consider whether the auditor's own participation is sufficient to be able to act as the principal auditor. For this purpose the auditor would consider:
   
   (a) the materiality of the portion of the financial information which the principal auditor audits;
   
   (b) the principal auditor's degree of knowledge regarding the business of the components;
   
   (c) the risk of material misstatements in the financial information of the components audited by the other auditor; and
   
   (d) the performance of additional procedures as set out in this SA regarding the components audited by other auditor resulting in the principal auditor having significant participation in such audit.

The Principal Auditor's Procedures

10. In certain situations, the statute governing the entity may confer a right on the principal auditor to visit a component and examine the books of account and other records of the said component, if he thinks it necessary to do so. Where another auditor has been appointed for the component, the principal auditor would normally be entitled to rely upon the work of such auditor unless there are special circumstances to make it essential for him to visit the component and/or to examine the books of account and other records of the said component.

11. When planning to use the work of another auditor, the principal auditor should consider the professional competence of the other auditor in the context of specific assignment if the other auditor is not a member of the Institute of Chartered Accountants of India.

12. The principal auditor should perform procedures to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence, that the work of the other auditor is adequate for the principal auditor's purposes, in the context of the specific assignment. When using the work of another auditor, the principal auditor should ordinarily perform the following procedures:

   (a) advise the other auditor of the use that is to be made of the other auditor's work and report and make sufficient arrangements for co-ordination of their efforts at the planning stage of the audit. The principal auditor would inform the other auditor of matters such as areas requiring special consideration, procedures for the identification of inter-component transactions that may require disclosure and the time-table for completion of audit; and

   (b) advise the other auditor of the significant accounting, auditing and reporting requirements and obtain representation as to compliance with them.

13. The principal auditor might discuss with the other auditor the audit procedures applied or review a written summary of the other auditor's procedures and findings which may be in the form of a completed questionnaire or check-list. The principal auditor may also wish to visit the other auditor. The nature, timing and extent of procedures will depend on the circumstances of the engagement and the principal auditor's knowledge of the professional competence of the other auditor. This knowledge may have been enhanced from the review of the previous audit work of the other auditor.

14. The principal auditor may conclude that it is not necessary to apply procedures such as those described in paragraph 13 because sufficient appropriate audit evidence previously obtained that acceptable quality control policies and procedures are complied with in the conduct of other auditor's practice.
15. The principal auditor should consider the significant findings of the other auditor.

16. The principal auditor may consider it appropriate to discuss with the other auditor and the management of the component, the audit findings or other matters affecting the financial information of the components. He may also decide that supplemental tests of the records or the financial statements of the component are necessary. Such tests may, depending upon the circumstances, be performed by the principal auditor or the other auditor.

17. In certain circumstances, the other auditor may happen to be a person other than a professionally qualified auditor. This may happen, for instance, where a component is situated in a foreign country and the applicable laws permit a person other than a professionally qualified auditor to audit the financial statements of such component. In such circumstances, the procedures outlined in paragraphs 10 to 16 assume added importance.

18. The principal auditor should document in his working papers the components whose financial information was audited by other auditors; their significance to the financial information of the entity as a whole; the names of the other auditors; and any conclusions reached that individual components are not material. The principal auditor should also document the procedures performed and the conclusions reached. For example, the auditor would document the results of discussions with the other auditor and review of the written summary of the other auditor's procedures. However, the principal auditor need not document the reasons for limiting the procedures in the circumstances described at 14 above, provided those reasons are summarised elsewhere in the documentation maintained by the principal auditor. Where the other auditor's report is other than unmodified, the principal auditor should also document how he has dealt with the qualifications or adverse remarks contained in the other auditor's report in framing his own report.

Co-ordination Between Auditors

19. There should be sufficient liaison between the principal auditor and the other auditor. For this purpose, the principal auditor may find it necessary to issue written communication(s) to the other auditor.

20. The other auditor, knowing the context in which his work is to be used by the principal auditor, should co-ordinate with the principal auditor. For example, by bringing to the principal auditor's immediate attention any significant findings requiring to be dealt with at entity level, adhering to the time-table for audit of the component, etc. He should ensure compliance with the relevant statutory requirements. Similarly, the principal auditor should advise the other auditor of any matters that come to his attention that he thinks may have an important bearing on the other auditor's work.

21. When considered necessary by him, the principal auditor may require the other auditor to answer a detailed questionnaire regarding matters on which the principal auditor requires information for discharging his duties. The other auditor should respond to such questionnaire on a timely basis.

---

*Standard on Auditing (SA) 700, "The Auditor's Report on Financial Statements", deals with the concept of "modified audit report". An auditor's report is considered to be modified when it includes:

- Matters that do not affect the auditor’s opinion
  - emphasis of matter
- Matters that do affect the auditor’s opinion
  - qualified opinion,
  - disclaimer of opinion, or
  - adverse opinion*. 
Reporting Considerations
22. When the principal auditor concludes, based on his procedures, that the work of the other auditor cannot be used and the principal auditor has not been able to perform sufficient additional procedures regarding the financial information of the component audited by the other auditor, the principal auditor should express a qualified opinion or disclaimer of opinion because there is a limitation on the scope of audit.

23. In all circumstances, if the other auditor issues, or intends to issue, a modified auditor's report, the principal auditor should consider whether the subject of the modification is of such nature and significance, in relation to the financial information of the entity on which the principal auditor is reporting that it requires a modification of the principal auditor's report.

Division of Responsibility
24. The principal auditor would not be responsible in respect of the work entrusted to the other auditors, except in circumstances which should have aroused his suspicion about the reliability of the work performed by the other auditors.

25. When the principal auditor has to base his opinion on the financial information of the entity as a whole relying upon the statements and reports of the other auditors, his report should state clearly the division of responsibility for the financial information of the entity by indicating the extent to which the financial information of components audited by the other auditors have been included in the financial information of the entity, e.g., the number of divisions/branches/subsidiaries or other components audited by other auditors.

Effective Date
26. This Standard on Auditing becomes operative for all audits relating to accounting periods beginning on or after April 1, 2002.

Compatibility with International Standard on Auditing (ISA) 600
The auditing standards established in this Standard on Auditing (SA) are generally consistent, in all material respects, with those set out in ISA 600 "Using the Work of Another Auditor".
Using the Work of Internal Auditors

(Effective for all audits relating to accounting periods beginning on or after April 1, 2016)

Introduction

Scope of this SA

1. This Standard on Auditing (SA) deals with the external auditor’s responsibilities if using the work of internal auditors. This includes (a) using the work of the internal audit function in obtaining audit evidence and (b) using internal auditors to provide direct assistance under the direction, supervision and review of the external auditor.

2. This SA does not apply if the entity does not have an internal audit function. (Ref: Para. A2)

3. If the entity has an internal audit function, the requirements in this SA relating to using the work of that function do not apply if:
   (a) The responsibilities and activities of the function are not relevant to the audit; or
   (b) Based on the auditor’s preliminary understanding of the function obtained as a result of procedures performed under SA 315,1 the external auditor does not expect to use the work of the function in obtaining audit evidence.

   Nothing in this SA requires the external auditor to use the work of the internal audit function to modify the nature or timing, or reduce the extent, of audit procedures to be performed directly by the external auditor; it remains a decision of the external auditor in establishing the overall audit strategy.

4. Furthermore, the requirements in this SA relating to direct assistance do not apply if the external auditor does not plan to use internal auditors to provide direct assistance.

5. In some cases, the external auditor may be prohibited, or restricted to some extent, by law or regulation from using the work of the internal audit function or using internal auditors to provide direct assistance. The SAs do not override laws or regulations that govern an audit of financial statements.2 Such prohibitions or restrictions will therefore not prevent the external auditor from complying with the SAs. (Ref: Para. A31)

* Published in August, 2009 issue of the Journal.
1 Please see the conforming amendments to Revised SA 315, Identifying and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement through Understanding the Entity and Its Environment, arising pursuant to issuance of this SA 610 (Revised). These are given at the end of the document.
2 SA 200, Overall Objectives of the Independent Auditor and the Conduct of an Audit in Accordance with Standards on Auditing, paragraph A55.
Relationship between SA 315 and SA 610 (Revised)

6. Many entities establish internal audit functions as part of their internal control and governance structures. The objectives and scope of an internal audit function, the nature of its responsibilities and its organizational status, including the function’s authority and accountability, vary widely and depend on the size and structure of the entity and the requirements of management and, where applicable, those charged with governance.

7. SA 315 addresses how the knowledge and experience of the internal audit function can inform the external auditor’s understanding of the entity and its environment and identification and assessment of risks of material misstatement. SA 315 also explains how effective communication between the internal and external auditors also creates an environment in which the external auditor can be informed of significant matters that may affect the external auditor’s work.

8. Depending on whether the internal audit function’s organizational status and relevant policies and procedures adequately support the objectivity of the internal auditors, the level of competency of the internal audit function, and whether the function applies a systematic and disciplined approach, the external auditor may also be able to use the work of the internal audit function in a constructive and complementary manner. This SA addresses the external auditor’s responsibilities when, based on the external auditor’s preliminary understanding of the internal audit function obtained as a result of procedures performed under SA 315, the external auditor expects to use the work of the internal audit function as part of the audit evidence obtained. Such use of that work modifies the nature or timing, or reduces the extent, of audit procedures to be performed directly by the external auditor.

9. In addition, this SA also addresses the external auditor’s responsibilities if considering using internal auditors to provide direct assistance under the direction, supervision and review of the external auditor.

10. There may be individuals in an entity that perform procedures similar to those performed by an internal audit function. However, unless performed by an objective and competent function that applies a systematic and disciplined approach, including quality control, such procedures would be considered internal controls and obtaining evidence regarding the effectiveness of such controls would be part of the auditor’s responses to assessed risks in accordance with SA 330.

The External Auditor’s Responsibility for the Audit

11. The external auditor has sole responsibility for the audit opinion expressed, and that responsibility is not reduced by the external auditor’s use of the work of the internal audit function or internal auditors to provide direct assistance on the engagement. Although they may perform audit procedures similar to those performed by the external auditor, neither the internal audit function nor the internal auditors are independent of the entity as is required of the external auditor in an audit of financial statements in accordance with SA 200. This SA, therefore, defines the conditions that are necessary for the external auditor to be able to use the work of internal auditors. It also defines the necessary work effort to obtain sufficient appropriate evidence that the work of the internal audit function, or internal auditors providing direct assistance, is

---

3 Please see the conforming amendments to Revised SA 315, Identifying and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement through Understanding the Entity and Its Environment, arising pursuant to issuance of this SA 610 (Revised). These are given at the end of the document. (Para A116 of SA 315 in those conforming amendments)

4 See paragraphs 15–25

5 SA 330, The Auditor’s Responses to Assessed Risks.

6 SA 200, paragraph 14.
adequate for the purposes of the audit. The requirements are designed to provide a framework for the external auditor’s judgments regarding the use of the work of internal auditors to prevent over or undue use of such work.

**Effective Date**

12. This SA is effective for audits of financial statements for periods beginning on or after 01st April, 2016.

**Objectives**

13. The objectives of the external auditor, where the entity has an internal audit function and the external auditor expects to use the work of the function to modify the nature or timing, or reduce the extent, of audit procedures to be performed directly by the external auditor, or to use internal auditors to provide direct assistance, are:

   (a) To determine whether the work of the internal audit function or direct assistance from internal auditors can be used, and if so, in which areas and to what extent; and having made that determination:

   (b) If using the work of the internal audit function, to determine whether that work is adequate for purposes of the audit; and

   (c) If using internal auditors to provide direct assistance, to appropriately direct, supervise and review their work.

**Definitions**

14. For purposes of the SAs, the following terms have the meanings attributed below:

   (a) Internal audit function – A function of an entity that performs assurance and consulting activities designed to evaluate and improve the effectiveness of the entity’s governance, risk management and internal control processes. (Ref: Para. A1–A4)

   (b) Direct assistance – The use of internal auditors to perform audit procedures under the direction, supervision and review of the external auditor.

**Requirements**

**Determining Whether, in Which Areas, and to What Extent the Work of the Internal Audit Function Can Be Used**

**Evaluating the Internal Audit Function**

15. The external auditor shall determine whether the work of the internal audit function can be used for purposes of the audit by evaluating the following:

   (a) The extent to which the internal audit function’s organizational status and relevant policies and procedures support the objectivity of the internal auditors; (Ref: Para. A5–A9)

   (b) The level of competence of the internal audit function; and (Ref: Para. A5–A9)

   (c) Whether the internal audit function applies a systematic and disciplined approach, including quality control. (Ref: Para. A10–A11)

16. The external auditor shall not use the work of the internal audit function if the external auditor determines that:

   (a) The function’s organizational status and relevant policies and procedures do not adequately support
the objectivity of internal auditors;
(b) The function lacks sufficient competence; or
(c) The function does not apply a systematic and disciplined approach, including quality control. (Ref: Para. A12–A14)

Determining the Nature and Extent of Work of the Internal Audit Function that Can Be Used

17. As a basis for determining the areas and the extent to which the work of the internal audit function can be used, the external auditor shall consider the nature and scope of the work that has been performed, or is planned to be performed, by the internal audit function and its relevance to the external auditor's overall audit strategy and audit plan. (Ref: Para. A15–A17)

18. The external auditor shall make all significant judgments in the audit engagement and, to prevent undue use of the work of the internal audit function, shall plan to use less of the work of the function and perform more of the work directly: (Ref: Para. A15–A17)
(a) The more judgment is involved in:
   (i) Planning and performing relevant audit procedures; and
   (ii) Evaluating the audit evidence gathered; (Ref: Para. A18–A19)
(b) The higher the assessed risk of material misstatement at the assertion level, with special consideration given to risks identified as significant; (Ref: Para. A20–A22)
(c) The less the internal audit function's organizational status and relevant policies and procedures adequately support the objectivity of the internal auditors; and
(d) The lower the level of competence of the internal audit function.

19. The external auditor shall also evaluate whether, in aggregate, using the work of the internal audit function to the extent planned would still result in the external auditor being sufficiently involved in the audit, given the external auditor's sole responsibility for the audit opinion expressed. (Ref: Para. A15–A22)

20. The external auditor shall, in communicating with those charged with governance an overview of the planned scope and timing of the audit in accordance with SA 260, communicate how the external auditor has planned to use the work of the internal audit function. (Ref: Para. A23)

Using the Work of the Internal Audit Function

21. If the external auditor plans to use the work of the internal audit function, the external auditor shall discuss the planned use of its work with the function as a basis for coordinating their respective activities. (Ref: Para. A24–A26)

22. The external auditor shall read the reports of the internal audit function relating to the work of the function that the external auditor plans to use to obtain an understanding of the nature and extent of audit procedures it performed and the related findings.

23. The external auditor shall perform sufficient audit procedures on the body of work of the internal audit function as a whole that the external auditor plans to use to determine its adequacy for purposes of the audit, including evaluating whether:

© The Institute of Chartered Accountants of India
(a) The work of the function had been properly planned, performed, supervised, reviewed and documented;

(b) Sufficient appropriate evidence had been obtained to enable the function to draw reasonable conclusions; and

(c) Conclusions reached are appropriate in the circumstances and the reports prepared by the function are consistent with the results of the work performed. (Ref: Para. A27–A30)

24. The nature and extent of the external auditor’s audit procedures shall be responsive to the external auditor’s evaluation of:

(a) The amount of judgment involved;

(b) The assessed risk of material misstatement;

(c) The extent to which the internal audit function’s organizational status and relevant policies and procedures support the objectivity of the internal auditors; and

(d) The level of competence of the function; (Ref: Para. A27–A29) and shall include reperformance of some of the work. (Ref: Para. A30)

25. The external auditor shall also evaluate whether the external auditor’s conclusions regarding the internal audit function in paragraph 15 of this SA and the determination of the nature and extent of use of the work of the function for purposes of the audit in paragraphs 18–19 of this SA remain appropriate.

Determining Whether, in Which Areas, and to What Extent Internal Auditors Can Be Used to Provide Direct Assistance

Determining Whether Internal Auditors Can Be Used to Provide Direct Assistance for Purposes of the Audit

26. The external auditor may be prohibited by law or regulation from obtaining direct assistance from internal auditors. If so, paragraphs 27–35 and 37 do not apply. (Ref: Para. A31)

27. If using internal auditors to provide direct assistance is not prohibited by law or regulation, and the external auditor plans to use internal auditors to provide direct assistance on the audit, the external auditor shall evaluate the existence and significance of threats to objectivity and the level of competence of the internal auditors who will be providing such assistance. The external auditor’s evaluation of the existence and significance of threats to the internal auditors’ objectivity shall include inquiry of the internal auditors regarding interests and relationships that may create a threat to their objectivity. (Ref: Para. A32–A34)

28. The external auditor shall not use an internal auditor to provide direct assistance if:

(a) There are significant threats to the objectivity of the internal auditor; or

(b) The internal auditor lacks sufficient competence to perform the proposed work. (Ref: Para. A32–A34)

Determining the Nature and Extent of Work that Can Be Assigned to Internal Auditors Providing Direct Assistance

* See paragraph 18.
29. In determining the nature and extent of work that may be assigned to internal auditors and the
nature, timing and extent of direction, supervision and review that is appropriate in the
circumstances, the external auditor shall consider:
   (a) The amount of judgment involved in:
       (i) Planning and performing relevant audit procedures; and
       (ii) Evaluating the audit evidence gathered;
   (b) The assessed risk of material misstatement; and
   (c) The external auditor's evaluation of the existence and significance of threats to the objectivity and level
       of competence of the internal auditors who will be providing such assistance. (Ref: Para. A35–A39)

30. The external auditor shall not use internal auditors to provide direct assistance to perform procedures
    that:
   (a) Involve making significant judgments in the audit; (Ref: Para. A19)
   (b) Relate to higher assessed risks of material misstatement where the judgment required in performing
       the relevant audit procedures or evaluating the audit evidence gathered is more than limited; (Ref:
       Para. A38)
   (c) Relate to work with which the internal auditors have been involved and which has already been, or will
       be, reported to management or those charged with governance by the internal audit function; or
   (d) Relate to decisions the external auditor makes in accordance with this SA regarding the internal audit
       function and the use of its work or direct assistance. (Ref: Para. A35–A39)

31. Having appropriately evaluated whether and, if so, to what extent internal auditors can be used to
    provide direct assistance on the audit, the external auditor shall, in communicating with those charged with
governance an overview of the planned scope and timing of the audit in accordance with SA 260,° communicate
the nature and extent of the planned use of internal auditors to provide direct assistance so as to
reach a mutual understanding that such use is not excessive in the circumstances of the engagement.
(Ref: Para. A39)

32. The external auditor shall evaluate whether, in aggregate, using internal auditors to provide direct
    assistance to the extent planned, together with the planned use of the work of the internal audit function,
would still result in the external auditor being sufficiently involved in the audit, given the external auditor's
sole responsibility for the audit opinion expressed.

Using Internal Auditors to Provide Direct Assistance

33. Prior to using internal auditors to provide direct assistance for purposes of the audit, the external
auditor shall:
   (a) Obtain written agreement from an authorized representative of the entity that the internal auditors will
be allowed to follow the external auditor’s instructions, and that the entity will not intervene in the work
the internal auditor performs for the external auditor; and
   (b) Obtain written agreement from the internal auditors that they will keep confidential specific matters as
instructed by the external auditor and inform the external auditor of any threat to their objectivity.

° SA 260, paragraph 11.
34. The external auditor shall direct, supervise and review the work performed by internal auditors on the
engagement in accordance with SA 220\(^\text{10}\). In so doing:

(a) The nature, timing and extent of direction, supervision, and review shall recognize that the internal
auditors are not independent of the entity and be responsive to the outcome of the evaluation of the
factors in paragraph 29 of this SA; and

(b) The review procedures shall include the external auditor checking back to the underlying audit
evidence for some of the work performed by the internal auditors.

The direction, supervision and review by the external auditor of the work performed by the internal auditors
shall be sufficient in order for the external auditor to be satisfied that the internal auditors have obtained
sufficient appropriate audit evidence to support the conclusions based on that work. (Ref: Para. A40–A41)

35. In directing, supervising and reviewing the work performed by internal auditors, the external auditor
shall remain alert for indications that the external auditor’s evaluations in paragraph 27 are no longer
appropriate.

**Documentation**

36. If the external auditor uses the work of the internal audit function, the external auditor shall include in
the audit documentation:

(a) The evaluation of:

   (i) Whether the function’s organizational status and relevant policies and procedures adequately
       support the objectivity of the internal auditors;

   (ii) The level of competence of the function; and

   (iii) Whether the function applies a systematic and disciplined approach, including quality control;

(b) The nature and extent of the work used and the basis for that decision; and

(c) The audit procedures performed by the external auditor to evaluate the adequacy of the work used.

37. If the external auditor uses internal auditors to provide direct assistance on the audit, the external
auditor shall include in the audit documentation:

(a) The evaluation of the existence and significance of threats to the objectivity of the internal auditors, and
the level of competence of the internal auditors used to provide direct assistance;

(b) The basis for the decision regarding the nature and extent of the work performed by the internal
auditors;

(c) Who reviewed the work performed and the date and extent of that review in accordance with SA 230\(^\text{11}\);

(d) The written agreements obtained from an authorized representative of the entity and the internal
auditors under paragraph 33 of this SA; and

(e) The working papers prepared by the internal auditors who provided direct assistance on the audit
engagement.

\(^{10}\) SA 220, Quality Control for an Audit of Financial Statements.

\(^{11}\) SA 230, Audit Documentation.
Application and Other Explanatory Material

Definition of Internal Audit Function (Ref: Para. 2, 14(a))

A1. The objectives and scope of internal audit functions typically include assurance and consulting activities designed to evaluate and improve the effectiveness of the entity’s governance processes, risk management and internal control such as the following:

Activities Relating to Governance

- The internal audit function may assess the governance process in its accomplishment of objectives on ethics and values, performance management and accountability, communicating risk and control information to appropriate areas of the organization and effectiveness of communication among those charged with governance, external and internal auditors, and management.

Activities Relating to Risk Management

- The internal audit function may assist the entity by identifying and evaluating significant exposures to risk and contributing to the improvement of risk management and internal control (including effectiveness of the financial reporting process).
- The internal audit function may perform procedures to assist the entity in the detection of fraud.

Activities Relating to Internal Control

- Evaluation of internal control. The internal audit function may be assigned specific responsibility for reviewing controls, evaluating their operation and recommending improvements thereto. In doing so, the internal audit function provides assurance on the control. For example, the internal audit function might plan and perform tests or other procedures to provide assurance to management and those charged with governance regarding the design, implementation and operating effectiveness of internal control, including those controls that are relevant to the audit.
- Examination of financial and operating information. The internal audit function may be assigned to review the means used to identify, recognize, measure, classify and report financial and operating information, and to make specific inquiry into individual items, including detailed testing of transactions, balances and procedures.
- Review of operating activities. The internal audit function may be assigned to review the economy, efficiency and effectiveness of operating activities, including non-financial activities of an entity.
- Review of compliance with laws and regulations. The internal audit function may be assigned to review compliance with laws, regulations and other external requirements, and with management policies and directives and other internal requirements.

A2. Activities similar to those performed by an internal audit function may be conducted by functions with other titles within an entity. Some or all of the activities of an internal audit function may also be outsourced to a third-party service provider. Neither the title of the function, nor whether it is performed by the entity or a third-party service provider, are sole determinants of whether or not the external auditor can use the work of the function. Rather, it is the nature of the activities; the extent to which the internal audit function’s organizational status and relevant policies and procedures support the objectivity of the internal auditors; competence; and systematic and disciplined approach of the function that are relevant. References in this SA
to the work of the internal audit function include relevant activities of other functions or third-party providers that have these characteristics.

A3. In addition, those in the entity with operational and managerial duties and responsibilities outside of the internal audit function would ordinarily face threats to their objectivity that would preclude them from being treated as part of an internal audit function for the purpose of this SA, although they may perform control activities that can be tested in accordance with SA 330. For this reason, monitoring controls performed by an owner-manager would not be considered equivalent to an internal audit function.

A4. While the objectives of an entity’s internal audit function and the external auditor differ, the function may perform audit procedures similar to those performed by the external auditor in an audit of financial statements. If so, the external auditor may make use of the function for purposes of the audit in one or more of the following ways:

- To obtain information that is relevant to the external auditor’s assessments of the risks of material misstatement due to error or fraud. In this regard, SA 315 requires the external auditor to obtain an understanding of the nature of the internal audit function’s responsibilities, its status within the organization, and the activities performed, or to be performed, and make inquiries of appropriate individuals within the internal audit function (if the entity has such a function); or

- Unless prohibited, or restricted to some extent, by law or regulation, the external auditor, after appropriate evaluation, may decide to use work that has been performed by the internal audit function during the period in partial substitution for audit evidence to be obtained directly by the external auditor.

In addition, unless prohibited, or restricted to some extent, by law or regulation, the external auditor may use internal auditors to perform audit procedures under the direction, supervision and review of the external auditor (referred to as “direct assistance” in this SA).

Determining Whether, in Which Areas, and to What Extent the Work of the Internal Audit Function Can Be Used

Evaluating the Internal Audit Function

Objectivity and Competence (Ref: Para. 15(a)–(b))

A5. The external auditor exercises professional judgment in determining whether the work of the internal audit function can be used for purposes of the audit, and the nature and extent to which the work of the internal audit function can be used in the circumstances.

A6. The extent to which the internal audit function’s organizational status and relevant policies and procedures support the objectivity of the internal auditors and the level of competence of the function are particularly important in determining whether to use and, if so, the nature and extent of the use of the work of the function that is appropriate in the circumstances.

---

12 See paragraph 10.
13 Please see the conforming amendments to Revised SA 315, Identifying and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement through Understanding the Entity and Its Environment, arising pursuant to issuance of this SA 610 (Revised). These are given at the end of the document. (please see SA 315, paragraph 6(a) therein)
14 See paragraphs 15–25.
15 See paragraphs 26–35.
A7. Objectivity refers to the ability to perform those tasks without allowing bias, conflict of interest or undue influence of others to override professional judgments. Factors that may affect the external auditor’s evaluation include the following:

- Whether the organizational status of the internal audit function, including the function’s authority and accountability, supports the ability of the function to be free from bias, conflict of interest or undue influence of others to override professional judgments. For example, whether the internal audit function reports to those charged with governance or an officer with appropriate authority, or if the function reports to management, whether it has direct access to those charged with governance.
- Whether the internal audit function is free of any conflicting responsibilities, for example, having managerial or operational duties or responsibilities that are outside of the internal audit function.
- Whether those charged with governance oversee employment decisions related to the internal audit function, for example, determining the appropriate remuneration policy.
- Whether there are any constraints or restrictions placed on the internal audit function by management or those charged with governance, for example, in communicating the internal audit function’s findings to the external auditor.
- Whether the internal auditors are members of relevant professional bodies and their memberships obligate their compliance with relevant professional standards relating to objectivity, or whether their internal policies achieve the same objectives.

A8. Competence of the internal audit function refers to the attainment and maintenance of knowledge and skills of the function as a whole at the level required to enable assigned tasks to be performed diligently and in accordance with applicable professional standards. Factors that may affect the external auditor’s determination include the following:

- Whether the internal audit function is adequately and appropriately resourced relative to the size of the entity and the nature of its operations.
- Whether there are established policies for hiring, training and assigning internal auditors to internal audit engagements.
- Whether the internal auditors have adequate technical training and proficiency in auditing. Relevant criteria that may be considered by the external auditor in making the assessment may include, for example, the internal auditors’ possession of a relevant professional designation and experience.
- Whether the internal auditors possess the required knowledge relating to the entity’s financial reporting and the applicable financial reporting framework and whether the internal audit function possesses the necessary skills (for example, industry-specific knowledge) to perform work related to the entity’s financial statements.
- Whether the internal auditors are members of relevant professional bodies that oblige them to comply with the relevant professional standards including continuing professional development requirements.

A9. Objectivity and competence may be viewed as a continuum. The more the internal audit function’s organizational status and relevant policies and procedures adequately support the objective of the internal auditors and the higher the level of competence of the function, the more likely the external auditor may make use of the work of the function and in more areas. However, an organizational status and relevant policies and procedures that provide strong support for the objectivity of the internal auditors cannot compensate for the lack of sufficient competence of the internal audit function. Equally, a high level of competence of the internal audit function cannot compensate for an organizational status and policies and procedures that do not adequately support the objectivity of the internal auditors.
Application of a Systematic and Disciplined Approach (Ref: Para. 15(c))

A10. The application of a systematic and disciplined approach to planning, performing, supervising, reviewing and documenting its activities distinguishes the activities of the internal audit function from other monitoring control activities that may be performed within the entity.

A11. Factors that may affect the external auditor’s determination of whether the internal audit function applies a systematic and disciplined approach include the following:

- The existence, adequacy and use of documented internal audit procedures or guidance covering such areas as risk assessments, work programs, documentation and reporting, the nature and extent of which is commensurate with the size and circumstances of an entity.

- Whether the internal audit function has appropriate quality control policies and procedures, for example, such as those policies and procedures in SQC 1\(^{16}\) that would be applicable to an internal audit function (such as those relating to leadership, human resources and engagement performance) or quality control requirements in standards set by the relevant professional bodies for internal auditors. Such bodies may also establish other appropriate requirements such as conducting periodic external quality assessments.

Circumstances When Work of the Internal Audit Function Cannot Be Used (Ref: Para. 16)

A12. The external auditor’s evaluation of whether the internal audit function’s organizational status and relevant policies and procedures adequately support the objectivity of the internal auditors, the level of competence of the internal audit function, and whether it applies a systematic and disciplined approach may indicate that the risks to the quality of the work of the function are too significant and therefore it is not appropriate to use any of the work of the function as audit evidence.

A13. Consideration of the factors in paragraphs A7, A8 and A11 of this SA individually and in aggregate is important because an individual factor is often not sufficient to conclude that the work of the internal audit function cannot be used for purposes of the audit. For example, the internal audit function’s organizational status is particularly important in evaluating threats to the objectivity of the internal auditors. If the internal audit function reports to management, this would be considered a significant threat to the function’s objectivity unless other factors such as those described in paragraph A7 of this SA collectively provide sufficient safeguards to reduce the threat to an acceptable level.

A14. In addition, a self-review threat\(^{17}\) is created when the external auditor accepts an engagement to provide internal audit services to an audit client, and the results of those services will be used in conducting the audit. This is because of the possibility that the engagement team will use the results of the internal audit service without properly evaluating those results or without exercising the same level of professional skepticism as would be exercised when the internal audit work is performed by individuals who are not members of the firm. Paragraph 290.173 of the Code of Ethics, issued by the Institute of Chartered Accountants of India therefore in the context of provision of internal audit service to financial statement audit clients, specifically provides that “a statutory auditor of an entity cannot be its internal auditor as it will not be possible for him to give an independent and objective opinion”. The said Code of Ethics discusses the threats and the safeguards that can be applied to reduce the threats to an acceptable level in other circumstances.

\(^{16}\) Standard on Quality Control (SQC) 1, Quality Control for Firms that Perform Audits and Reviews of Historical Financial Information, and Other Assurance and Related Services Engagements.

\(^{17}\) Attention of the members is also invited to paragraph 2.1 of the Guidance Note on Independence of Auditors, issued by the Institute of Chartered Accountants of India.
Determining the Nature and Extent of Work of the Internal Audit Function that Can Be Used

Factors Affecting the Determination of the Nature and Extent of the Work of the Internal Audit Function that Can Be Used (Ref: Para. 17–19)

A15. Once the external auditor has determined that the work of the internal audit function can be used for purposes of the audit, a first consideration is whether the planned nature and scope of the work of the internal audit function that has been performed, or is planned to be performed, is relevant to the overall audit strategy and audit plan that the external auditor has established in accordance with SA 300.18

A16. Examples of work of the internal audit function that can be used by the external auditor include the following:
   - Testing of the operating effectiveness of controls.
   - Substantive procedures involving limited judgment.
   - Observations of inventory counts.
   - Tracing transactions through the information system relevant to financial reporting.
   - Testing of compliance with regulatory requirements.
   - In some circumstances, audits or reviews of the financial information of subsidiaries that are not significant components to the group (where this does not conflict with the requirements of SA 600).19

A17. The external auditor’s determination of the planned nature and extent of use of the work of the internal audit function will be influenced by the external auditor’s evaluation of the extent to which the internal audit function’s organizational status and relevant policies and procedures adequately support the objectivity of the internal auditors and the level of competence of the internal audit function in paragraph 18 of this SA. In addition, the amount of judgment needed in planning, performing and evaluating such work and the assessed risk of material misstatement at the assertion level are inputs to the external auditor’s determination. Further, there are circumstances in which the external auditor cannot use the work of the internal audit function for purpose of the audit as described in paragraph 16 of this SA.

Judgments in planning and performing audit procedures and evaluating results (Ref: Para. 18(a), 30(a))

A18. The greater the judgment needed to be exercised in planning and performing the audit procedures and evaluating the audit evidence, the external auditor will need to perform more procedures directly in accordance with paragraph 18 of this SA, because using the work of the internal audit function alone will not provide the external auditor with sufficient appropriate audit evidence.

A19. Since the external auditor has sole responsibility for the audit opinion expressed, the external auditor needs to make the significant judgments in the audit engagement in accordance with paragraph 18. Significant judgments include the following:
   - Assessing the risks of material misstatement;
   - Evaluating the sufficiency of tests performed;
   - Evaluating the appropriateness of management’s use of the going concern assumption;

---

18 SA 300, Planning an Audit of Financial Statements.
19 SA 600, Using the Work of Another Auditor.
Part I: Engagement and Quality Control Standards

- Evaluating significant accounting estimates; and
- Evaluating the adequacy of disclosures in the financial statements, and other matters affecting the auditor’s report.

Assessed risk of material misstatement (Ref: Para. 18(b))

A20. For a particular account balance, class of transaction or disclosure, the higher an assessed risk of material misstatement at the assertion level, the more judgment is often involved in planning and performing the audit procedures and evaluating the results thereof. In such circumstances, the external auditor will need to perform more procedures directly in accordance with paragraph 18 of this SA, and accordingly, make less use of the work of the internal audit function in obtaining sufficient appropriate audit evidence. Furthermore, as explained in SA 200, the higher the assessed risks of material misstatement, the more persuasive the audit evidence required by the external auditor will need to be, and, therefore, the external auditor will need to perform more of the work directly.

A21. As explained in SA 315, significant risks require special audit consideration and therefore the external auditor’s ability to use the work of the internal audit function in relation to significant risks will be restricted to procedures that involve limited judgment. In addition, where the risks of material misstatement is other than low, the use of the work of the internal audit function alone is unlikely to reduce audit risk to an acceptably low level and eliminate the need for the external auditor to perform some tests directly.

A22. Carrying out procedures in accordance with this SA may cause the external auditor to revaluate the external auditor’s assessment of the risks of material misstatement. Consequently, this may affect the external auditor’s determination of whether to use the work of the internal audit function and whether further application of this SA is necessary.

Communication with Those Charged with Governance (Ref: Para. 20)

A23. In accordance with SA 260, the external auditor is required to communicate with those charged with governance an overview of the planned scope and timing of the audit. The planned use of the work of the internal audit function is an integral part of the external auditor’s overall audit strategy and is therefore relevant to those charged with governance for their understanding of the proposed audit approach.

Using the Work of the Internal Audit Function

Discussion and Coordination with the Internal Audit Function (Ref: Para. 21)

A24. In discussing the planned use of their work with the internal audit function as a basis for coordinating the respective activities, it may be useful to address the following:

- The timing of such work.
- The nature of the work performed.
- The extent of audit coverage.
- Materiality for the financial statements as a whole (and, if applicable, materiality level or levels for particular classes of transactions, account balances or disclosures), and performance materiality.

---

20 SA 200, paragraph A29.
21 SA 315, paragraph 4(e).
22 SA 260, paragraph 11.
I.438 Auditing Pronouncements

- Proposed methods of item selection and sample sizes.
- Documentation of the work performed.
- Review and reporting procedures.

A25. Coordination between the external auditor and the internal audit function is effective when, for example:

- Discussions take place at appropriate intervals throughout the period.
- The external auditor informs the internal audit function of significant matters that may affect the function.
- The external auditor is advised of and has access to relevant reports of the internal audit function and is informed of any significant matters that come to the attention of the function when such matters may affect the work of the external auditor so that the external auditor is able to consider the implications of such matters for the audit engagement.

A26. SA 200\(^23\) discusses the importance of the auditor planning and performing the audit with professional skepticism, including being alert to information that brings into question the reliability of documents and responses to inquiries to be used as audit evidence. Accordingly, communication with the internal audit function throughout the engagement may provide opportunities for internal auditors to bring matters that may affect the work of the external auditor to the external auditor's attention.\(^24\) The external auditor is then able to take such information into account in the external auditor's identification and assessment of risks of material misstatement. In addition, if such information may be indicative of a heightened risk of a material misstatement of the financial statements or may be regarding any actual, suspected or alleged fraud, the external auditor can take this into account in the external auditor's identification of risk of material misstatement due to fraud in accordance with SA 240\(^25\).

Procedures to Determine the Adequacy of Work of the Internal Audit Function (Ref: Para. 23–24)

A27. The external auditor's audit procedures on the body of work of the internal audit function as a whole that the external auditor plans to use provide a basis for evaluating the overall quality of the function's work and the objectivity with which it has been performed.

A28. The procedures the external auditor may perform to evaluate the quality of the work performed and the conclusions reached by the internal audit function, in addition to reperformance in accordance with paragraph 24, include the following:

- Making inquiries of appropriate individuals within the internal audit function.
- Observing procedures performed by the internal audit function.
- Reviewing the internal audit function's work program and working papers.

\(^{23}\) SA 200, paragraphs 15 and A18.

\(^{24}\) Please see the conforming amendments to Revised SA 315, Identifying and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement through Understanding the Entity and Its Environment, arising pursuant to issuance of this SA 610 (Revised). These are given at the end of the document. (please see SA 315, paragraph A116 therein).

A29. The more judgment involved, the higher the assessed risk of material misstatement, the less the internal audit function’s organizational status and relevant policies and procedures adequately support the objectivity of the internal auditors, or the lower the level of competence of the internal audit function, the more audit procedures are needed to be performed by the external auditor on the overall body of work of the function to support the decision to use the work of the function in obtaining sufficient appropriate audit evidence on which to base the audit opinion.

Reperformance (Ref: Para. 24)

A30. For purposes of this SA, reperformance involves the external auditor’s independent execution of procedures to validate the conclusions reached by the internal audit function. This objective may be accomplished by examining items already examined by the internal audit function or, where it is not possible to do so, the same objective may also be accomplished by examining sufficient other similar items not actually examined by the internal audit function. Reperformance provides more persuasive evidence regarding the adequacy of the work of the internal audit function compared to other procedures the external auditor may perform in paragraph A28. While it is not necessary for the external auditor to do reperformance in each area of work of the internal audit function that is being used, some reperformance is required on the body of work of the internal audit function as a whole that the external auditor plans to use in accordance with paragraph 24. The external auditor is more likely to focus reperformance in those areas where more judgment was exercised by the internal audit function in planning, performing and evaluating the results of the audit procedures and in areas of higher risk of material misstatement.

Determining Whether, in Which Areas and to What Extent Internal Auditors Can Be Used to Provide Direct Assistance

Determining Whether Internal Auditors Can Be Used to Provide Direct Assistance for Purposes of the Audit (Ref: Para. 5, 26–28)

A31. In case where the external auditor is prohibited by law or regulation from using internal auditors to provide direct assistance, it is relevant for the principal auditors to consider whether the prohibition also extends to component auditors and, if so, to address this in the communication to the component auditors.

A32. As stated in paragraph A7 of this SA, objectivity refers to the ability to perform the proposed work without allowing bias, conflict of interest or undue influence of others to override professional judgments. In evaluating the existence and significance of threats to the objectivity of an internal auditor, the following factors may be relevant:

- The extent to which the internal audit function’s organizational status and relevant policies and procedures support the objectivity of the internal auditors.
- Family and personal relationships with an individual working in, or responsible for, the aspect of the entity to which the work relates.
- Association with the division or department in the entity to which the work relates.
- Significant financial interests in the entity other than remuneration on terms consistent with those applicable to other employees at a similar level of seniority.

Material issued by relevant professional bodies for internal auditors may provide additional useful guidance.

---

26 See paragraph A7.
A33. There may also be some circumstances in which the significance of the threats to the objectivity of an internal auditor is such that there are no safeguards that could reduce them to an acceptable level. For example, because the adequacy of safeguards is influenced by the significance of the work in the context of the audit, paragraph 30(a) and (b) prohibits the use of internal auditors to provide direct assistance in relation to performing procedures that involve making significant judgments in the audit or that relate to higher assessed risks of material misstatement where the judgment required in performing the relevant audit procedures or evaluating the audit evidence gathered is more than limited. This would also be the case where the work involved creates a self-review threat, which is why internal auditors are prohibited from performing procedures in the circumstances described in paragraph 30(c) and (d).

A34. In evaluating the level of competence of an internal auditor, many of the factors in paragraph A8 of this SA may also be relevant, applied in the context of individual internal auditors and the work to which they may be assigned.

Determining the Nature and Extent of Work that Can Be Assigned to Internal Auditors Providing Direct Assistance (Ref: Para. 29–31)

A35. Paragraphs A15–A22 of this SA provide relevant guidance in determining the nature and extent of work that may be assigned to internal auditors.

A36. In determining the nature of work that may be assigned to internal auditors, the external auditor is careful to limit such work to those areas that would be appropriate to be assigned. Examples of activities and tasks that would not be appropriate to use internal auditors to provide direct assistance include the following:

- Discussion of fraud risks. However, the external auditors may make inquiries of internal auditors about fraud risks in the organization in accordance with SA 31527.
- Determination of unannounced audit procedures as addressed in SA 240.

A37. Similarly, since in accordance with SA 50528 the external auditor is required to maintain control over external confirmation requests and evaluate the results of external confirmation procedures, it would not be appropriate to assign these responsibilities to internal auditors. However, internal auditors may assist in assembling information necessary for the external auditor to resolve exceptions in confirmation responses.

A38. The amount of judgment involved and the risk of material misstatement are also relevant in determining the work that may be assigned to internal auditors providing direct assistance. For example, in circumstances where the valuation of accounts receivable is assessed as an area of higher risk, the external auditor could assign the checking of the accuracy of the aging to an internal auditor providing direct assistance. However, because the evaluation of the adequacy of the provision based on the aging would involve more than limited judgment, it would not be appropriate to assign that latter procedure to an internal auditor providing direct assistance.

A39. Notwithstanding the direction, supervision and review by the external auditor, excessive use of internal auditors to provide direct assistance may affect perceptions regarding the independence of the external audit engagement.

27 SA 315, paragraph 6(a).
28 SA 505, External Confirmations, paragraphs 7 and 16.

© The Institute of Chartered Accountants of India
Using Internal Auditors to Provide Direct Assistance (Ref: Para. 34)

A40. As individuals in the internal audit function are not independent of the entity as is required of the external auditor when expressing an opinion on financial statements, the external auditor’s direction, supervision and review of the work performed by internal auditors providing direct assistance will generally be of a different nature and more extensive than if members of the engagement team perform the work.

A41. In directing the internal auditors, the external auditor may, for example, remind the internal auditors to bring accounting and auditing issues identified during the audit to the attention of the external auditor. In reviewing the work performed by the internal auditors, the external auditor’s considerations include whether the evidence obtained is sufficient and appropriate in the circumstances, and that it supports the conclusions reached.

RELATED CONFORMING AMENDMENTS

Note: The following are conforming amendments to SQC 1 and other SAs as a result of SA 610 (Revised), Using the Work of Internal Auditors. The footnote numbers within these amendments do not align with the SAs that will be amended, and reference should be made to those SAs.

SQC 1, Quality Control for Firms that Perform Audits and Reviews of Historical Financial Information, and Other Assurance and Related Services Engagements

Definitions

6. In this SQC, the following terms have the meanings attributed below:

(e) Engagement team – all personnel performing an engagement, including any experts contracted by the firm in connection with that engagement. The term “engagement team” excludes individuals within the client’s internal audit function who provide direct assistance on an audit engagement when the external auditor complies with the requirements of SA 610 (Revised)29.

SA 220, Quality Control for an Audit of Financial Statements

Definitions

7. For purposes of the SAs, the following terms have the meanings attributed below:

(d) Engagement team – all personnel performing an engagement, including any experts contracted by the firm in connection with that engagement. The term “engagement team” excludes individuals within the client’s internal audit function who provide direct assistance on an audit engagement when the external auditor complies with the requirements of SA 610 (Revised)30.

29 SA 610 (Revised), Using the Work of Internal Auditors, establishes limits on the use of direct assistance. It also acknowledges that the external auditor may be prohibited by law or regulation from obtaining direct assistance from internal auditors. Therefore, the use of direct assistance is restricted to situations where it is permitted.

30 SA 610 (Revised), Using the Work of Internal Auditors, establishes limits on the use of direct assistance. It also acknowledges that the external auditor may be prohibited by law or regulation from obtaining direct assistance from internal auditors. Therefore, the use of direct assistance is restricted to situations where it is permitted.
SA 260, Communication with Those Charged with Governance

A18. Other planning matters that it may be appropriate to discuss with those charged with governance include:

- Where the entity has an internal audit function, the extent to which the auditor will use the work of internal audit, and how the external and internal auditors can best work together in a constructive and complementary manner, and the nature and extent of any planned use of internal auditors to provide direct assistance.
- SA 300, Planning an Audit of Financial Statements

Appendix

Characteristics of the Engagement

- The availability of the work of internal auditors and the extent of the auditor’s potential reliance on such work, or internal auditors can be used to provide direct assistance.

SA 315, Identifying and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement Through Understanding the Entity and Its Environment

6. The risk assessment procedures shall include the following:

(a) Inquiries of management, of appropriate individuals within the internal audit function (if the function exists), and of others within the entity who in the auditor’s judgment may have information that is likely to assist in identifying risks of material misstatement due to fraud or error. (Ref: Para. A6-A13)

23. If the entity has an internal audit function, the auditor shall obtain an understanding of the following in order to determine whether the internal audit function is likely to be relevant to the audit:

(a) The nature of the internal audit function’s responsibilities, and how the internal audit function fits in the entity’s organisational structure;

(b) The activities performed, or to be performed, by the internal audit function. (Ref: Para. A104-109 - A103.116)

Inquiries of Management, the Internal Audit Function and Others Within the Entity
(Ref: Para. 6(a))

A6. Much of the information obtained by the auditor’s inquiries is obtained from management and those responsible for financial reporting. Information may also be obtained by the auditor through inquiries with the internal audit function, if the entity has such a function, and others within the entity.

A7. However, the auditor may also obtain information, or a different perspective in identifying risks of material misstatement, through inquiries of others within the entity and other employees with different levels of authority. For example:

31 SA 610 (Revised), paragraphs 20 and 31.
32 SA 610(Revised), “Using the Work of Internal Auditors”, paragraph 7(a)14(a), defines the term “internal audit function” for purposes of the SAs.
Part I: Engagement and Quality Control Standards  I.443

Inquiries directed toward internal audit personnel may provide information about internal audit procedures performed during the year relating to the design and effectiveness of the entity's internal control and whether management has satisfactorily responded to findings from those procedures.

Inquiries of the Internal Audit Function

A9. If an entity has an internal audit function, inquiries of the appropriate individuals within the function may provide information that is useful to the auditor in obtaining an understanding of the entity and its environment, and in identifying and assessing risks of material misstatement at the financial statement and assertion levels. In performing its work, the internal audit function is likely to have obtained insight into the entity's operations and business risks, and may have findings based on its work, such as identified control deficiencies or risks, that may provide valuable input into the auditor's understanding of the entity, the auditor's risk assessments or other aspects of the audit. The auditor's inquiries are therefore made whether or not the auditor expects to use the work of the internal audit function to modify the nature or timing, or reduce the extent, of audit procedures to be performed. Inquiries of particular relevance may be about matters the internal audit function has raised with those charged with governance and the outcomes of the function's own risk assessment process.

A10. If, based on responses to the auditor's inquiries, it appears that there are findings that may be relevant to the entity's financial reporting and the audit, the auditor may consider it appropriate to read related reports of the internal audit function. Examples of reports of the internal audit function that may be relevant include the function's strategy and planning documents and reports that have been prepared for management or those charged with governance describing the findings of the internal audit function's examinations.

A11. In addition, in accordance with SA 240, if the internal audit function provides information to the auditor regarding any actual, suspected or alleged fraud, the auditor takes this into account in the auditor's identification of risk of material misstatement due to fraud.

A12. Appropriate individuals within the internal audit function with whom inquiries are made are those who, in the auditor's judgment, have the appropriate knowledge, experience and authority, such as the chief internal audit executive or, depending on the circumstances, other personnel within the function. The auditor may also consider it appropriate to have periodic meetings with these individuals.

Considerations specific to public sector entities (Ref: Para 6(a))

A13. Auditors of public sector entities often have additional responsibilities with regard to internal control and compliance with applicable laws and regulations. Inquiries of appropriate individuals in the internal audit function can assist the auditors in identifying the risk of material noncompliance with applicable laws and regulations and the risk of deficiencies in internal control over financial reporting.

33 The relevant requirements are contained in SA 610 (Revised).
34 SA 240, paragraph 19.
A79. The auditor may also consider how management has responded to the findings and recommendations of the internal audit function regarding identified deficiencies in internal control relevant to the audit, including whether and how such responses have been implemented, and whether they have been subsequently evaluated by the internal audit function.

The Entity's Internal Audit Function-(Ref: Para 23)

A109101. If the entity's has an internal audit function, obtaining an understanding of that function contributes to the auditor's understanding of the entity and its environment, including internal control in particular the role that the function plays in the entity's monitoring of internal control over financial reporting. This understanding, together with the information obtained from the auditor's inquiries in paragraph 6(a) of this SA, may also provide information that is directly relevant to the auditor's identification and assessment of the risks of material misstatement is likely to be relevant to the audit if the nature of the internal audit function's responsibilities and activities are related to the entity's financial reporting, and the auditor expects to use the work of the internal auditors to modify the nature or timing, or reduce the extent, of audit procedures to be performed. When the auditor determines that the internal audit function is likely to be relevant to the audit, SA 610 applies.

A110102. The objectives and scope of an internal audit function, and therefore the nature of its responsibilities and its status within the organisation, including the function's authority and accountability, vary widely and depend on the size and structure of the entity and the requirements of management and, where applicable, those charged with governance. The responsibilities of an internal audit function may include, for example, monitoring of internal control, risk management, and review of compliance with laws and regulations. On the other hand, the responsibilities of the internal audit function may be limited to the review of the economy, efficiency and effectiveness of operations, for example, and accordingly, may not relate to the entity's financial reporting. These matters may be set out in an internal audit charter or terms of reference.

A111. The responsibilities of an internal audit function may include performing procedures and evaluating the results to provide assurance to management and those charged with governance regarding the design and effectiveness of risk management, internal control and governance processes. If so, the internal audit function may play an important role in the entity's monitoring of internal control over financial reporting. However, the responsibilities of the internal audit function may be focussed on evaluating the economy, efficiency and effectiveness of operations and, if so, the work of the function may not directly relate to the entity's financial reporting.

A112. The auditor's inquiries of appropriate individuals within the internal audit function in accordance with paragraph 6(a) of this SA help the auditor obtain an understanding of the nature of the internal audit function's responsibilities. If the auditor determines that the function's responsibilities are related to the entity's financial reporting, the auditor may obtain further understanding of the activities performed, or to be performed, by the internal audit function by reviewing the internal audit function's audit plan for the period, if any, and discussing that plan with the appropriate individuals within the function.

A113103. If the nature of the internal audit function's responsibilities and assurance activities are related to the entity's financial reporting, the auditor may also be able to use the work of the internal audit function to modify the nature or timing, or reduce the extent, of audit procedures to be performed directly by the auditor in obtaining audit evidence. Auditors may be more likely to be able to use the work of an entity's internal audit function when it appears, for example, based on experience in previous audits or the auditor's risk assessment procedures, that the entity has an internal audit function that is adequately and appropriately resourced relative to the size of the entity and the nature of its operations, and has a
direct reporting relationship to those charged with governance, the external auditor’s consideration of the activities performed, or to be performed by, the internal audit function may include review of the internal audit function’s audit plan for the period, if any, and discussion of that plan with the internal auditors.

A114. If, based on the auditor’s preliminary understanding of the internal audit function, the auditor expects to use the work of the internal audit function to modify the nature or timing, or reduce the extent, of audit procedures to be performed, SA 610 (Revised) applies.

A115. As is further discussed in SA 610 (Revised), the activities of an internal audit function are distinct from other monitoring controls that may be relevant to financial reporting, such as reviews of management accounting information that are designed to contribute to how the entity prevents or detects misstatements.

A116. Establishing communications with the appropriate individuals within an entity’s internal audit function early in the engagement, and maintaining such communications throughout the engagement, can facilitate effective sharing of information. It creates an environment in which the auditor can be informed of significant matters that may come to the attention of the internal audit function when such matters may affect the work of the auditor. SA 200 discusses the importance of the auditor planning and performing the audit with professional skepticism, including being alert to information that brings into question the reliability of documents and responses to inquiries to be used as audit evidence. Accordingly, communication with the internal audit function throughout the engagement may provide opportunities for internal auditors to bring such information to the auditor’s attention. The auditor is then able to take such information into account in the auditor’s identification and assessment of risks of material misstatement.
SA 620*
Using the Work of an Auditor’s Expert
(Effective for all audits relating to accounting periods beginning on or after April 1, 2010)

Introduction

Scope of this SA
1. This Standard on Auditing (SA) deals with the auditor’s responsibilities regarding the use of an individual or organisation’s work in a field of expertise other than accounting or auditing, when that work is used to assist the auditor in obtaining sufficient appropriate audit evidence.

2. This SA does not deal with:
   (a) Situations where the engagement team includes a member with expertise in specialised area of accounting or auditing, which is dealt with in SA 2201; or
   (b) The auditor’s use of the work of an individual or organisation possessing expertise in a field other than accounting or auditing, whose work in that field is used by the entity to assist the entity in preparing the financial statements (a management’s expert), which is dealt with in SA 5002.

The Auditor’s Responsibility for the Audit Opinion
3. The auditor has sole responsibility for the audit opinion expressed, and that responsibility is not reduced by the auditor’s use of the work of an auditor’s expert. Nonetheless, if the auditor using the work of an auditor’s expert, having followed this SA, concludes that the work of that expert is adequate for the auditor’s purposes, the auditor may accept that expert’s findings or conclusions in the expert’s field as appropriate audit evidence.

Effective Date
4. This SA is effective for audits of financial statements for periods beginning on or after April 1, 2010.

Objectives
5. The objectives of the auditor are:
   (a) To determine whether to use the work of an auditor’s expert; and
   (b) If using the work of an auditor’s expert, to determine whether that work is adequate for the auditor’s purposes.

Definitions
6. For purposes of the SAs, the following terms have the meanings attributed below:
   (a) Auditor’s expert – An individual or organisation possessing expertise in a field other than accounting or auditing, whose work in that field is used by the auditor to assist the auditor in obtaining sufficient appropriate audit evidence. An auditor’s expert may be either an auditor’s internal expert (who is a

---

1 Published in March, 2010 issue of the Journal.
Partner or staff, including temporary staff, of the auditor’s firm or a network firm), or an auditor’s external expert. (Ref: Para. A1-A3)

(b) Expertise – Skills, knowledge and experience in a particular field.

(c) Management’s expert – An individual or organisation possessing expertise in a field other than accounting or auditing, whose work in that field is used by the entity to assist the entity in preparing the financial statements.

Requirements

Determining the Need for an Auditor’s Expert

7. If expertise in a field other than accounting or auditing is necessary to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence, the auditor shall determine whether to use the work of an auditor’s expert. (Ref: Para. A4-A9)

Nature, Timing and Extent of Audit Procedures

8. The nature, timing and extent of the auditor’s procedures with respect to the requirements in paragraphs 9-13 of this SA will vary depending on the circumstances. In determining the nature, timing and extent of those procedures, the auditor shall consider matters including: (Ref: Para. A10)

(a) The nature of the matter to which that expert’s work relates;

(b) The risks of material misstatement in the matter to which that expert’s work relates;

(c) The significance of that expert’s work in the context of the audit;

(d) Whether that expert is subject to the auditor’s firm’s quality control policies and procedures. (Ref: Para. A11-A13)

The Competence, Capabilities and Objectivity of the Auditor’s Expert

9. The auditor shall evaluate whether the auditor’s expert has the necessary competence, capabilities and objectivity for the auditor’s purposes. In the case of an auditor’s external expert, the evaluation of objectivity shall include inquiry regarding interests and relationships that may create a threat to that expert’s objectivity. (Ref: Para. A14-A20)

Obtaining an Understanding of the Field of Expertise of the Auditor’s Expert

10. The auditor shall obtain a sufficient understanding of the field of expertise of the auditor’s expert to enable the auditor to: (Ref: Para. A21-A22)

(a) Determine the nature, scope and objectives of that expert’s work for the auditor’s purposes; and

(b) Evaluate the adequacy of that work for the auditor’s purposes.

Agreement with the Auditor’s Expert

11. The auditor shall agree, in writing when appropriate, on the following matters with the auditor’s expert: (Ref: Para. A23-A26)

(a) The nature, scope and objectives of that expert’s work; (Ref: Para. A27)

(b) The respective roles and responsibilities of the auditor and that expert; (Ref: Para. A28-A29)

(c) The nature, timing and extent of communication between the auditor and that expert, including the form of any report to be provided by that expert; and (Ref: Para. A30)

(d) The need for the auditor’s expert to observe confidentiality requirements. (Ref: Para. A31)
I.448 Auditing Pronouncements

Evaluating the Adequacy of the Auditor's Expert's Work

12. The auditor shall evaluate the adequacy of the auditor's expert's work for the auditor's purposes, including: (Ref: Para. A32)
   (a) The relevance and reasonableness of that expert's findings or conclusions, and their consistency with other audit evidence; (Ref: Para. A33-A34)
   (b) If that expert's work involves use of significant assumptions and methods, the relevance and reasonableness of those assumptions and methods in the circumstances; and (Ref: Para. A35-A37)
   (c) If that expert's work involves the use of source data that is significant to that expert's work, the relevance, completeness, and accuracy of that source data. (Ref: Para. A38-A39)

13. If the auditor determines that the work of the auditor's expert is not adequate for the auditor's purposes, the auditor shall: (Ref: Para. A40)
   (a) Agree with that expert on the nature and extent of further work to be performed by that expert; or
   (b) Perform further audit procedures appropriate to the circumstances.

Reference to the Auditor's Expert in the Auditor's Report

14. The auditor shall not refer to the work of an auditor's expert in an auditor's report containing an unmodified opinion unless required by law or regulation to do so. If such reference is required by law or regulation, the auditor shall indicate in the auditor's report that the reference does not reduce the auditor's responsibility for the audit opinion. (Ref: Para. A41)

15. If the auditor makes reference to the work of an auditor's expert in the auditor's report because such reference is relevant to an understanding of a modification to the auditor's opinion, the auditor shall indicate in the auditor's report that such reference does not reduce the auditor's responsibility for that opinion. (Ref: Para. A42)

Application and Other Explanatory Material

Definitions

Auditor's Expert (Ref: Para. 6(a))

A1. Expertise in a field other than accounting or auditing may include expertise in relation to such matters as:
   • The valuation of complex financial instruments, land and buildings, plant and machinery, jewelry, works of art, antiques, intangible assets, assets acquired and liabilities assumed in business combinations and assets that may have been impaired.
   • The actuarial calculation of liabilities associated with insurance contracts or employee benefit plans.
   • The estimation of oil and gas reserves.
   • The valuation of environmental liabilities, and site clean-up costs.
   • The interpretation of contracts, laws and regulations.
   • The analysis of complex or unusual tax compliance issues.

A2. In many cases, distinguishing between expertise in accounting or auditing, and expertise in another field, will be straightforward, even where this involves a specialised area of accounting or auditing. For example, an individual with expertise in applying methods of accounting for deferred income tax can often be easily distinguished from an expert in taxation law. The former is not an expert for the purposes of this SA as this constitutes accounting expertise; the latter is an expert for the purposes of this SA as this constitutes
legal expertise. Similar distinctions may also be able to be made in other areas, for example, between expertise in methods of accounting for financial instruments, and expertise in complex modeling for the purpose of valuing financial instruments. In some cases, however, particularly those involving an emerging area of accounting or auditing expertise, distinguishing between specialised areas of accounting or auditing, and expertise in another field, will be a matter of professional judgment. Applicable professional rules and standards regarding education and competency requirements for accountants and auditors may assist the auditor in exercising that judgment.

A3. It is necessary to apply judgment when considering how the requirements of this SA are affected by the fact that an auditor’s expert may be either an individual or an organisation. For example, when evaluating the competence, capabilities and objectivity of an auditor’s expert, it may be that the expert is an organisation the auditor has previously used, but the auditor has no prior experience of the individual expert assigned by the organisation for the particular engagement; or it may be the reverse, that is, the auditor may be familiar with the work of an individual expert but not with the organisation that expert has joined. In either case, both the personal attributes of the individual and the managerial attributes of the organisation (such as systems of quality control the organisation implements) may be relevant to the auditor’s evaluation.

Determination the Need for an Auditor’s Expert (Ref: Para. 7)

A4. An auditor’s expert may be needed to assist the auditor in one or more of the following:
- Obtaining an understanding of the entity and its environment, including its internal control.
- Identifying and assessing the risks of material misstatement.
- Determining and implementing overall responses to assessed risks at the financial statement level.
- Designing and performing further audit procedures to respond to assessed risks at the assertion level, comprising tests of controls or substantive procedures.
- Evaluating the sufficiency and appropriateness of audit evidence obtained in forming an opinion on the financial statements.

A5. The risks of material misstatement may increase when expertise in a field other than accounting is needed for management to prepare the financial statements, for example, because this may indicate some complexity, or because management may not possess knowledge of the field of expertise. If in preparing the financial statements management does not possess the necessary expertise, a management’s expert may be used in addressing those risks. Relevant controls, including controls that relate to the work of a management’s expert, if any, may also reduce the risks of material misstatement.

A6. If the preparation of the financial statements involves the use of expertise in a field other than accounting, the auditor, who is skilled in accounting and auditing, may not possess the necessary expertise to audit those financial statements. The engagement partner is required to be satisfied that the engagement team, and any auditor’s experts who are not part of the engagement team, collectively have the appropriate competence and capabilities to perform the audit engagement. Further, the auditor is required to ascertain the nature, timing and extent of resources necessary to perform the engagement. The auditor’s determination of whether to use the work of an auditor’s expert, and if so when and to what extent, assists the auditor in meeting these requirements. As the audit progresses, or as circumstances change, the auditor may need to revise earlier decisions about using the work of an auditor’s expert.

A7. An auditor who is not an expert in a relevant field other than accounting or auditing may nevertheless

---

3 SA 220, paragraph 14.
4 SA 300, “Planning an Audit of Financial Statements”, paragraph 7(e).
be able to obtain a sufficient understanding of that field to perform the audit without an auditor’s expert. This understanding may be obtained through, for example:

- Experience in auditing entities that require such expertise in the preparation of their financial statements.
- Education or professional development in the particular field. This may include formal courses, or discussion with individuals possessing expertise in the relevant field for the purpose of enhancing the auditor’s own capacity to deal with matters in that field. Such discussion differs from consultation with an auditor’s expert regarding a specific set of circumstances encountered on the engagement where that expert is given all the relevant facts that will enable the expert to provide informed advice about the particular matter.
- Discussion with auditors who have performed similar engagements.

A8. In other cases, however, the auditor may determine that it is necessary, or may choose, to use an auditor’s expert to assist in obtaining sufficient appropriate audit evidence. Considerations when deciding whether to use an auditor’s expert may include:

- Whether management has used a management’s expert in preparing the financial statements (see paragraph A9).
- The nature and significance of the matter, including its complexity.
- The risks of material misstatement in the matter.
- The expected nature of procedures to respond to identified risks, including the auditor’s knowledge of and experience with the work of experts in relation to such matters; and the availability of alternative sources of audit evidence.

A9. When management has used a management’s expert in preparing the financial statements, the auditor’s decision on whether to use an auditor’s expert may also be influenced by such factors as:

- The nature, scope and objectives of the management’s expert’s work.
- Whether the management’s expert is employed by the entity, or is a party engaged by it to provide relevant services.
- The extent to which management can exercise control or influence over the work of the management’s expert.
- The management’s expert’s competence and capabilities.
- Whether the management’s expert is subject to technical performance standards or other professional or industry requirements.
- Any controls within the entity over the management’s expert’s work.

SA 500 includes requirements and guidance regarding the effect of the competence, capabilities and objectivity of management’s experts on the reliability of audit evidence.

Nature, Timing and Extent of Audit Procedures (Ref: Para. 8)

A10. The nature, timing and extent of audit procedures with respect to the requirements in paragraphs 9-13 of this SA will vary depending on the circumstances. For example, the following factors may suggest the

---

5 SA 220, paragraph A21.
6 SA 500, paragraphs 8 and A34-A48.
Part I: Engagement and Quality Control Standards

need for different or more extensive procedures than would otherwise be the case:

- The work of the auditor’s expert relates to a significant matter that involves subjective and complex judgments.
- The auditor has not previously used the work of the auditor’s expert, and has no prior knowledge of that expert’s competence, capabilities and objectivity.
- The auditor’s expert is performing procedures that are integral to the audit, rather than being consulted to provide advice on an individual matter.
- The expert is an auditor’s external expert and is not, therefore, subject to the firm’s quality control policies and procedures.

**The Auditor’s Firm’s Quality Control Policies and Procedures (Ref: Para. 8(e))**

A11. An auditor’s internal expert may be a partner or staff, including temporary staff, of the auditor’s firm, and therefore subject to the quality control policies and procedures of that firm in accordance with SQC 17. Alternatively, an auditor’s internal expert may be a partner or staff, including temporary staff, of a network firm, which may share common quality control policies and procedures with the auditor’s firm.

A12. An auditor’s external expert is not a member of the engagement team and is not subject to quality control policies and procedures in accordance with SQC 18. Some law(s) or regulation(s), however, may require that an auditor’s external expert be treated as a member of the engagement team, and may therefore be subject to relevant ethical and other professional requirements, including those relating to independence, as determined by such law(s) or regulation(s)9.

A13. Engagement teams are entitled to rely on the firm’s system of quality control, unless information provided by the firm or other parties suggests otherwise10. The extent of that reliance will vary with the circumstances, and may affect the nature, timing and extent of the auditor’s procedures with respect to such matters as:

- Competence and capabilities, through recruitment and training programs.
- Objectivity. Auditor’s internal experts are subject to relevant ethical requirements, including those pertaining to independence.
- The auditor’s evaluation of the adequacy of the auditor’s expert’s work. For example, the firm’s training programs may provide auditor’s internal experts with an appropriate understanding of the interrelationship of their expertise with the audit process. Reliance on such training and other firm processes, such as protocols for scoping the work of auditor’s internal experts, may affect the nature, timing and extent of the auditor’s procedures to evaluate the adequacy of the auditor’s expert’s work.
- Adherence to regulatory and legal requirements, through monitoring processes.
- Agreement with the auditor’s expert.

Such reliance does not reduce the auditor’s responsibility to meet the requirements of this SA.

---

7 SQC 1, paragraph 6(e).
8 SQC 1, paragraph 6(e).
9 Relevant ethical requirements ordinarily comprise the Code of Ethics of the Institute of Chartered Accountants of India related to an audit of financial statements.
10 SA 220, paragraph 4.
The Competence, Capabilities and Objectivity of the Auditor’s Expert (Ref: Para. 9)
A14. The competence, capabilities and objectivity of an auditor’s expert are factors that significantly affect whether the work of the auditor’s expert will be adequate for the auditor’s purposes. Competence relates to the nature and level of expertise of the auditor’s expert. Capability relates to the ability of the auditor’s expert to exercise that competence in the circumstances of the engagement. Factors that influence capability may include, for example, geographic location, and the availability of time and resources. Objectivity relates to the possible effects that bias, conflict of interest, or the influence of others may have on the professional or business judgment of the auditor’s expert.
A15. Information regarding the competence, capabilities and objectivity of an auditor’s expert may come from a variety of sources, such as:
- Personal experience with previous work of that expert.
- Discussions with that expert.
- Discussions with other auditors or others who are familiar with that expert’s work.
- Knowledge of that expert’s qualifications, membership of a professional body or industry association, license to practice, or other forms of external recognition.
- Published papers or books written by that expert.
- The auditor’s firm’s quality control policies and procedures (see paragraphs A11-A13)
A16. Matters relevant to evaluating the competence, capabilities and objectivity of the auditor’s expert include whether that expert’s work is subject to technical performance standards or other professional or industry requirements, for example, ethical standards and other membership requirements of a professional body or industry association, accreditation standards of a licensing body, or requirements imposed by law or regulation.
A17. Other matters that may be relevant include:
- The relevance of the auditor’s expert’s competence to the matter for which that expert’s work will be used, including any areas of specialty within that expert’s field. For example, a particular actuary may specialise in property and casualty insurance, but have limited expertise regarding pension calculations.
- The auditor’s expert’s competence with respect to relevant accounting and auditing requirements, for example, knowledge of assumptions and methods, including models where applicable, that are consistent with the applicable financial reporting framework.
- Whether unexpected events, changes in conditions, or the audit evidence obtained from the results of audit procedures indicate that it may be necessary to reconsider the initial evaluation of the competence, capabilities and objectivity of the auditor’s expert as the audit progresses.
A18. A broad range of circumstances may threaten objectivity, for example, self-interest threats, advocacy threats, familiarity threats, self-review threats, and intimidation threats. Safeguards may eliminate or reduce such threats, and may be created by external structures (for example, the auditor’s expert’s profession, legislation or regulation), or by the auditor’s expert’s work environment (for example, quality control policies and procedures). There may also be safeguards specific to the audit engagement.
A19. The evaluation of the significance of threats to objectivity and of whether there is a need for safeguards may depend upon the role of the auditor’s expert and the significance of the expert’s work in the context of the audit. There may be some circumstances in which safeguards cannot reduce threats to an acceptable level, for example, if a proposed auditor’s expert is an individual who has played a significant role in
preparing the information that is being audited, that is, if the auditor's expert is a management's expert.

A20. When evaluating the objectivity of an auditor’s external expert, it may be relevant to:

(a) Inquire of the entity about any known interests or relationships that the entity has with the auditor’s external expert that may affect that expert’s objectivity.

(b) Discuss with that expert any applicable safeguards, including any professional requirements that apply to that expert; and evaluate whether the safeguards are adequate to reduce threats to an acceptable level. Interests and relationships that may be relevant to discuss with the auditor’s expert include:

- Financial interests.
- Business and personal relationships.
- Provision of other services by the expert, including by the organisation in the case of an external expert that is an organisation.
- In some cases, it may also be appropriate for the auditor to obtain a written representation from the auditor’s external expert about any interests or relationships with the entity of which that expert is aware.

Obtaining an Understanding of the Field of Expertise of the Auditor’s Expert (Ref: Para. 10)

A21. The auditor may obtain an understanding of the auditor’s expert’s field of expertise through the means described in paragraph A7, or through discussion with that expert.

A22. Aspects of the auditor’s expert’s field relevant to the auditor’s understanding may include:

- Whether that expert’s field has areas of specialty within it that are relevant to the audit (see paragraph A17).
- Whether any professional or other standards, and regulatory or legal requirements apply.
- What assumptions and methods, including models where applicable, are used by the auditor’s expert, and whether they are generally accepted within that expert’s field and appropriate for financial reporting purposes.
- The nature of internal and external data or information the auditor’s expert uses.

Agreement with the Auditor’s Expert (Ref: Para. 11)

A23. The nature, scope and objectives of the auditor’s expert’s work may vary considerably with the circumstances, as may the respective roles and responsibilities of the auditor and the auditor’s expert, and the nature, timing and extent of communication between the auditor and the auditor’s expert. It is therefore required that these matters are agreed between the auditor and the auditor’s expert regardless of whether the expert is an auditor’s external expert or an auditor’s internal expert.

A24. The matters noted in paragraph 8 may affect the level of detail and formality of the agreement between the auditor and the auditor’s expert, including whether it is appropriate that the agreement be in writing. For example, the following factors may suggest the need for more a detailed agreement than would otherwise be the case, or for the agreement to be set out in writing:

- The auditor’s expert will have access to sensitive or confidential entity information.
- The respective roles or responsibilities of the auditor and the auditor’s expert are different from those normally expected.
- Multi-jurisdictional legal or regulatory requirements apply.
The matter to which the auditor’s expert’s work relates is highly complex.

The auditor has not previously used work performed by that expert.

The greater the extent of the auditor’s expert’s work, and its significance in the context of the audit.

A25. The agreement between the auditor and an auditor’s external expert is often in the form of an engagement letter. The Appendix lists matters that the auditor may consider for inclusion in such an engagement letter, or in any other form of agreement with an auditor’s external expert.

A26. When there is no written agreement between the auditor and the auditor’s expert, evidence of the agreement may be included in, for example:

- Planning memoranda, or related working papers such as the audit program.
- The policies and procedures of the auditor’s firm. In the case of an auditor’s internal expert, the established policies and procedures to which that expert is subject may include particular policies and procedures in relation to that expert’s work. The extent of documentation in the auditor’s working papers depends on the nature of such policies and procedures. For example, no documentation may be required in the auditor’s working papers if the auditor’s firm has detailed protocols covering the circumstances in which the work of such an expert is used.

Nature, Scope and Objectives of Work (Ref: Para. 11(a))

A27. It may often be relevant when agreeing on the nature, scope and objectives of the auditor’s expert’s work to include discussion of any relevant technical performance standards or other professional or industry requirements that the expert will follow.

Respective Roles and Responsibilities (Ref: Para. 11(b))

A28. Agreement on the respective roles and responsibilities of the auditor and the auditor’s expert may include:

- Whether the auditor or the auditor’s expert will perform detailed testing of source data.
- Consent for the auditor to discuss the auditor’s expert’s findings or conclusions with the entity and others, and to include details of that expert’s findings or conclusions in a modified auditor’s report, if necessary (see paragraph A42).
- Any agreement to inform the auditor’s expert of the auditor’s conclusions concerning that expert’s work.

Working Papers

A29. Agreement on the respective roles and responsibilities of the auditor and the auditor’s expert may also include agreement about access to, and retention of, each other’s working papers. When the auditor’s expert is a member of the engagement team, that expert’s working papers form part of the audit documentation. Subject to any agreement to the contrary, auditor’s external experts’ working papers are their own and do not form part of the audit documentation.

Communication (Ref: Para. 11(c))

A30. Effective two-way communication facilitates the proper integration of the nature, timing and extent of the auditor’s expert’s procedures with other work on the audit, and appropriate modification of the auditor’s expert’s objectives during the course of the audit. For example, when the work of the auditor’s expert relates to the auditor’s conclusions regarding a significant risk, both a formal written report at the conclusion of that expert’s work, and oral reports as the work progresses, may be appropriate. Identification of specific partners or staff who will liaise with the auditor’s expert, and procedures for communication between that expert and the entity, assists timely and effective communication, particularly on larger engagements.
Confidentiality (Ref: Para. 11(d))

A31. It is necessary for the confidentiality provisions of relevant ethical requirements that apply to the auditor also to apply to the auditor’s expert. Additional requirements may be imposed by law or regulation. The entity may also have requested that specific confidentiality provisions be agreed with auditor’s external experts.

Evaluating the Adequacy of the Auditor’s Expert’s Work (Ref: Para. 12)

A32. The auditor’s evaluation of the auditor’s expert’s competence, capabilities and objectivity, the auditor’s familiarity with the auditor’s expert’s field of expertise, and the nature of the work performed by the auditor’s expert affect the nature, timing and extent of audit procedures to evaluate the adequacy of that expert’s work for the auditor’s purposes.

The Findings and Conclusions of the Auditor’s Expert (Ref: Para. 12(a))

A33. Specific procedures to evaluate the adequacy of the auditor’s expert’s work for the auditor’s purposes may include:

- Inquiries of the auditor’s expert.
- Reviewing the auditor’s expert’s working papers and reports.
- Corroborative procedures, such as:
  - Observing the auditor’s expert’s work;
  - Examining published data, such as statistical reports from reputable, authoritative sources;
  - Confirming relevant matters with third parties;
  - Performing detailed analytical procedures; and
  - Re-performing calculations.
- Discussion with another expert with relevant expertise when, for example, the findings or conclusions of the auditor’s expert are not consistent with other audit evidence.
- Discussing the auditor’s expert’s report with management.

A34. Relevant factors when evaluating the relevance and reasonableness of the findings or conclusions of the auditor’s expert, whether in a report or other form, may include whether they are:

- Presented in a manner that is consistent with any standards of the auditor's expert's profession or industry;
- Clearly expressed, including reference to the objectives agreed with the auditor, the scope of the work performed and standards applied;
- Based on an appropriate period and take into account subsequent events, where relevant;
- Subject to any reservation, limitation or restriction on use, and if so, whether this has implications for the auditor; and
- Based on appropriate consideration of errors or deviations encountered by the auditor’s expert.

Assumptions, Methods and Source Data

Assumptions and Methods (Ref: Para. 12(b))

A35. When the auditor’s expert’s work is to evaluate underlying assumptions and methods, including models where applicable, used by management in developing an accounting estimate, the auditor’s procedures are likely to be primarily directed to evaluating whether the auditor’s expert has adequately reviewed those assumptions and methods. When the auditor’s expert’s work is to develop an auditor’s point estimate or an
I.456 Auditing Pronouncements

Auditor’s range for comparison with management’s point estimate, the auditor’s procedures may be primarily directed to evaluating the assumptions and methods, including models where appropriate, used by the auditor’s expert.

A36. SA 540\(^\text{11}\) discusses the assumptions and methods used by management in making accounting estimates, including the use in some cases of highly specialised, entity-developed models. Although that discussion is written in the context of the auditor obtaining sufficient appropriate audit evidence regarding management’s assumptions and methods, it may also assist the auditor when evaluating an auditor’s expert’s assumptions and methods.

A37. When an auditor’s expert’s work involves the use of significant assumptions and methods, factors relevant to the auditor’s evaluation of those assumptions and methods include whether they are:

- Generally accepted within the auditor’s expert’s field;
- Consistent with the requirements of the applicable financial reporting framework;
- Dependent on the use of specialised models; and
- Consistent with those of management, and if not, the reason for, and effects of, the differences.

\textit{Source Data Used by the Auditor’s Expert (Ref: Para. 12(c))}

A38. When an auditor’s expert’s work involves the use of source data that is significant to that expert’s work, procedures such as the following may be used to test that data:

- Verifying the origin of the data, including obtaining an understanding of, and where applicable testing, the internal controls over the data and, where relevant, its transmission to the expert.
- Reviewing the data for completeness and internal consistency.

A39. In many cases, the auditor may test source data. However, in other cases, when the nature of the source data used by an auditor’s expert is highly technical in relation to the expert’s field, that expert may test the source data. If the auditor’s expert has tested the source data, inquiry of that expert by the auditor, or supervision or review of that expert’s tests may be an appropriate way for the auditor to evaluate that data’s relevance, completeness, and accuracy.

\textit{Inadequate Work (Ref: Para. 13)}

A40. If the auditor concludes that the work of the auditor’s expert is not adequate for the auditor’s purposes and the auditor cannot resolve the matter through the additional audit procedures required by paragraph 13, which may involve further work being performed by both the expert and the auditor, or include employing or engaging another expert, it may be necessary to express a modified opinion in the auditor’s report in accordance with SA 705 because the auditor has not obtained sufficient appropriate audit evidence\(^\text{12}\).

\textit{Reference to the Auditor’s Expert in the Auditor’s Report (Ref: Para. 14-15)}

A41. In some cases, law or regulation may require a reference to the work of an auditor’s expert, for example, for the purposes of transparency in the public sector.

A42. It may be appropriate in some circumstances to refer to the auditor’s expert in an auditor’s report containing a modified opinion, to explain the nature of the modification. In such circumstances, the auditor may need the permission of the auditor’s expert before making such a reference.

\(^{11}\) SA 540, “Auditing Accounting Estimates, Including Fair Value Accounting Estimates, and Related Disclosures”, paragraphs 8, 13 and 15.

\(^{12}\) SA 705, “Modifications to the Opinion in the Independent Auditor’s Report”, paragraph 6(b).
Modifications *vis-a-vis* ISA 620, “Using the Work of an Auditor’s Expert”

SA 620, “Using the Work of an Auditor’s Expert” does not contain any modifications *vis-à-vis* ISA 620.

Appendix

(Ref: Para. A25)

Considerations for Agreement between the Auditor and an Auditor’s External Expert

This Appendix lists matters that the auditor may consider for inclusion in any agreement with an auditor’s external expert. The following list is illustrative and is not exhaustive; it is intended only to be a guide that may be used in conjunction with the considerations outlined in this SA. Whether to include particular matters in the agreement depends on the circumstances of the engagement. The list may also be of assistance in considering the matters to be included in an agreement with an auditor’s internal expert.

**Nature, Scope and Objectives of the Auditor’s External Expert’s Work**

- The nature and scope of the procedures to be performed by the auditor’s external expert.
- The objectives of the auditor’s external expert’s work in the context of materiality and risk considerations concerning the matter to which the auditor’s external expert’s work relates, and, when relevant, the applicable financial reporting framework.
- Any relevant technical performance standards or other professional or industry requirements the auditor’s external expert will follow.
- The assumptions and methods, including models where applicable, the auditor’s external expert will use, and their authority.
- The effective date of, or when applicable the testing period for, the subject matter of the auditor’s external expert’s work, and requirements regarding subsequent events.

**The Respective Roles and Responsibilities of the Auditor and the Auditor’s External Expert**

- Relevant auditing and accounting standards, and relevant regulatory or legal requirements.
- The auditor’s external expert’s consent to the auditor’s intended use of that expert’s report, including any reference to it, or disclosure of it, to others, for example reference to it in a modified auditor’s report, if necessary, or disclosure of it to management or an audit committee.
- The nature and extent of the auditor’s review of the auditor’s external expert’s work.
- Whether the auditor or the auditor’s external expert will test source data.
- The auditor’s external expert’s access to the entity’s records, files, personnel and to experts engaged by the entity.
- Procedures for communication between the auditor’s external expert and the entity.
- The auditor’s and the auditor’s external expert’s access to each other’s working papers.
- Ownership and control of working papers during and after the engagement, including any file retention requirements.
- The auditor’s external expert’s responsibility to perform work with due skill and care.
- The auditor’s external expert’s competence and capability to perform the work.
I.458 Auditing Pronouncements

- The expectation that the auditor’s external expert will use all knowledge that expert has that is relevant to the audit or, if not, will inform the auditor.
- Any restriction on the auditor’s external expert’s association with the auditor’s report.
- Any agreement to inform the auditor’s external expert of the auditor’s conclusions concerning that expert’s work.

Communications and Reporting
- Methods and frequency of communications, including:
  - How the auditor’s external expert’s findings or conclusions will be reported (written report, oral report, ongoing input to the engagement team, etc.).
  - Identification of specific persons within the engagement team who will liaise with the auditor’s external expert.
- When the auditor’s external expert will complete the work and report findings or conclusions to the auditor.
- The auditor’s external expert’s responsibility to communicate promptly any potential delay in completing the work, and any potential reservation or limitation on that expert’s findings or conclusions.
- The auditor’s external expert’s responsibility to communicate promptly instances in which the entity restricts that expert’s access to records, files, personnel or experts engaged by the entity.
- The auditor’s external expert’s responsibility to communicate to the auditor all information that expert believes may be relevant to the audit, including any changes in circumstances previously communicated.
- The auditor’s external expert’s responsibility to communicate circumstances that may create threats to that expert’s objectivity, and any relevant safeguards that may eliminate or reduce such threats to an acceptable level.

Confidentiality
- The need for the auditor’s expert to observe confidentiality requirements, including:
  - The confidentiality provisions of relevant ethical requirements that apply to the auditor.
  - Additional requirements that may be imposed by law or regulation, if any.
  - Specific confidentiality provisions requested by the entity, if any.
SA 700 (Revised)
Forming an Opinion and Reporting on Financial Statements
(Effective for all audits relating to accounting periods beginning on or after April 1, 2017)

Introduction
Scope of this SA
1. This Standard on Auditing (SA) deals with the auditor’s responsibility to form an opinion on the financial statements. It also deals with the form and content of the auditor’s report issued as a result of an audit of financial statements.

2. SA 701\(^1\) deals with the auditor’s responsibility to communicate key audit matters in the auditor’s report. SA 705\(^2\) (Revised) and SA 706\(^3\) (Revised) deal with how the form and content of the auditor’s report are affected when the auditor expresses a modified opinion or includes an Emphasis of Matter paragraph or an Other Matter paragraph in the auditor’s report. Other SAs also contain reporting requirements that are applicable when issuing an auditor’s report.

3. This SA applies to an audit of a complete set of general purpose financial statements and is written in that context. SA 800\(^4\) deals with special considerations when financial statements are prepared in accordance with a special purpose framework. SA 805\(^5\) deals with special considerations relevant to an audit of a single financial statement or of a specific element, account or item of a financial statement. This SA also applies to audits for which SA 800 or SA 805 apply.

4. The requirements of this SA are aimed at addressing an appropriate balance between the need for consistency and comparability in auditor reporting globally and the need to increase the value of auditor reporting by making the information provided in the auditor’s report more relevant to users. This SA promotes consistency in the auditor’s report, but recognizes the need for flexibility to accommodate particular circumstances of individual jurisdictions. Consistency in the auditor’s report, when the audit has been conducted in accordance with SAs, promotes credibility in the global marketplace by making more readily identifiable those audits that have been conducted in accordance with globally recognized standards. It also helps to promote the user’s understanding and to identify unusual circumstances when they occur.

Effective Date
5. This SA is effective for audits of financial statements for periods beginning on or after April 1, 2017.

---

\(^1\) SA 701, Communicating Key Audit Matters in the Independent Auditor’s Report.
\(^2\) SA 705 (Revised), Modifications to the Opinion in the Independent Auditor’s Report.
\(^3\) SA 706 (Revised), Emphasis of Matter Paragraphs and Other Matter Paragraphs in the Independent Auditor’s Report.
\(^4\) SA 800, Special Considerations—Audits of Financial Statements Prepared in Accordance with Special Purpose Frameworks.
\(^5\) SA 805, Special Considerations—Audits of Single Financial Statements and Specific Elements, Accounts or Items of a Financial Statement.
I.460 Auditing Pronouncements

Objectives
6. The objectives of the auditor are:
   (a) To form an opinion on the financial statements based on an evaluation of the conclusions drawn from the audit evidence obtained; and
   (b) To express clearly that opinion through a written report.

Definitions
7. For purposes of the SAs, the following terms have the meanings attributed below:
   (a) General purpose financial statements – Financial statements prepared in accordance with a general purpose framework.
   (b) General purpose framework – A financial reporting framework designed to meet the common financial information needs of a wide range of users. The financial reporting framework may be a fair presentation framework or a compliance framework. The term “fair presentation framework” is used to refer to a financial reporting framework that requires compliance with the requirements of the framework and:
      (i) Acknowledges explicitly or implicitly that, to achieve fair presentation of the financial statements, it may be necessary for management to provide disclosures beyond those specifically required by the framework; or
      (ii) Acknowledges explicitly that it may be necessary for management to depart from a requirement of the framework to achieve fair presentation of the financial statements. Such departures are expected to be necessary only in extremely rare circumstances.
   (c) Unmodified opinion – The opinion expressed by the auditor when the auditor concludes that the financial statements are prepared, in all material respects, in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework.

8. Reference to “financial statements” in this SA means “a complete set of general purpose financial statements, including the related notes.” The related notes ordinarily comprise a summary of significant accounting policies and other explanatory information and any other information required to be included as part of the financial statements by the laws and regulations governing the entity. The requirements of the applicable financial reporting framework determine the form and content of the financial statements, and what constitutes a complete set of financial statements.

9. Reference to “Accounting Standards” in this SA includes:
   • The Accounting Standards issued by the Institute of Chartered Accountants of India (ICAI); or
   • The Standards of Accounting notified by the Central Government in pursuance of section 133 of the

6 SA 200, Overall Objectives of the Independent Auditor and the Conduct of an Audit in Accordance with Standards on Auditing, paragraph 13(a).
7 Paragraphs 25–26 deal with the phrases used to express this opinion in the case of a fair presentation framework and a compliance framework respectively.
8 For example, the Accounting Standards for Local Bodies issued by the Institute of Chartered Accountants of India.
Part I: Engagement and Quality Control Standards

Companies Act, 2013 and the Rules thereunder; or

- The International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRSs); or
- The International Public Sector Accounting Standards (IPSASs) issued by the International Public Sector Accounting Standards Board;

as may be applicable to the entity.

Requirements

Forming an Opinion on the Financial Statements

10. The auditor shall form an opinion on whether the financial statements are prepared, in all material respects, in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework.\(^9\)\(^10\)

11. In order to form that opinion, the auditor shall conclude as to whether the auditor has obtained reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements as a whole are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error. That conclusion shall take into account:

(a) The auditor’s conclusion, in accordance with SA 330, whether sufficient appropriate audit evidence has been obtained;\(^11\)

(b) The auditor’s conclusion, in accordance with SA 450, whether uncorrected misstatements are material, individually or in aggregate;\(^12\) and

(c) The evaluations required by paragraphs 12–15.

12. The auditor shall evaluate whether the financial statements are prepared, in all material respects, in accordance with the requirements of the applicable financial reporting framework. This evaluation shall include consideration of the qualitative aspects of the entity’s accounting practices, including indicators of possible bias in management’s judgments. (Ref: Para. A1–A3)

13. In particular, the auditor shall evaluate whether, in view of the requirements of the applicable financial reporting framework:

(a) The financial statements adequately disclose the significant accounting policies selected and applied;

(b) The accounting policies selected and applied are consistent with the applicable financial reporting framework and are appropriate;

(c) The accounting estimates made by management are reasonable;

(d) The information presented in the financial statements is relevant, reliable, comparable, and understandable;

(e) The financial statements provide adequate disclosures to enable the intended users to understand the effect of material transactions and events on the information conveyed in the financial statements; and (Ref: Para. A4)

(f) The terminology used in the financial statements, including the title of each financial statement, is appropriate.

\(^9\) SA 200, paragraph 11

\(^10\) Paragraphs 25–26 deal with the phrases used to express this opinion in the case of a fair presentation framework and a compliance framework respectively.

\(^11\) SA 330, The Auditor’s Responses to Assessed Risks, paragraph 26

\(^12\) SA 450, Evaluation of Misstatements Identified during the Audit, paragraph 11

© The Institute of Chartered Accountants of India
14. When the financial statements are prepared in accordance with a fair presentation framework, the evaluation required by paragraphs 12–13 shall also include whether the financial statements achieve fair presentation. The auditor’s evaluation as to whether the financial statements achieve fair presentation shall include consideration of:

(a) The overall presentation, structure and content of the financial statements; and
(b) Whether the financial statements, including the related notes, represent the underlying transactions and events in a manner that achieves fair presentation.

15. The auditor shall evaluate whether the financial statements adequately refer to or describe the applicable financial reporting framework. (Ref: Para. A5–A10)

Form of Opinion

16. The auditor shall express an unmodified opinion when the auditor concludes that the financial statements are prepared, in all material respects, in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework.

17. If the auditor:

(a) concludes that, based on the audit evidence obtained, the financial statements as a whole are not free from material misstatement; or
(b) is unable to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence to conclude that the financial statements as a whole are free from material misstatement,

the auditor shall modify the opinion in the auditor’s report in accordance with SA 705 (Revised).

18. If financial statements prepared in accordance with the requirements of a fair presentation framework do not achieve fair presentation, the auditor shall discuss the matter with management and, depending on the requirements of the applicable financial reporting framework and how the matter is resolved, shall determine whether it is necessary to modify the opinion in the auditor’s report in accordance with SA 705 (Revised). (Ref: Para. A11)

19. When the financial statements are prepared in accordance with a compliance framework, the auditor is not required to evaluate whether the financial statements achieve fair presentation. However, if in extremely rare circumstances the auditor concludes that such financial statements are misleading, the auditor shall discuss the matter with management and, depending on how it is resolved, shall determine whether, and how, to communicate it in the auditor’s report. (Ref: Para. A12)

Auditor’s Report

20. The auditor’s report shall be in writing. (Ref: Para. A13–A14)

Auditor’s Report for Audits Conducted in Accordance with Standards on Auditing

Title

21. The auditor’s report shall have a title that clearly indicates that it is the report of an independent auditor. (Ref: Para. A15)

Addressee

22. The auditor’s report shall be addressed, as appropriate, based on the circumstances of the engagement. (Ref: Para. A16)

Auditor’s Opinion

23. The first section of the auditor’s report shall include the auditor’s opinion, and shall have the heading “Opinion.”
24. The Opinion section of the auditor’s report shall also:
   (a) Identify the entity whose financial statements have been audited;
   (b) State that the financial statements have been audited;
   (c) Identify the title of each statement comprising the financial statements;
   (d) Refer to the notes, including the summary of significant accounting policies; and
   (e) Specify the date of, or period covered by, each financial statement comprising the financial statements.
   (Ref: Para. A17–A18)

25. When expressing an unmodified opinion on financial statements prepared in accordance with a fair presentation framework, the auditor’s opinion shall, unless otherwise required by law or regulation, use one of the following phrases, which are regarded as being equivalent:
   (a) In our opinion, the accompanying financial statements present fairly, in all material respects, […] in accordance with [the applicable financial reporting framework]; or
   (b) In our opinion, the accompanying financial statements give a true and fair view of […] in accordance with [the applicable financial reporting framework]. (Ref: Para. A19–A26)

26. When expressing an unmodified opinion on financial statements prepared in accordance with a compliance framework, the auditor’s opinion shall be that the accompanying financial statements are prepared, in all material respects, in accordance with [the applicable financial reporting framework]. (Ref: Para. A21–A26)

27. If the reference to the applicable financial reporting framework in the auditor’s opinion is not to Accounting Standards referred to in paragraph 9, the auditor’s opinion shall identify the origin of such other framework.

   Basis for Opinion

28. The auditor’s report shall include a section, directly following the Opinion section, with the heading “Basis for Opinion”, that:
   (Ref: Para. A27)
   (a) States that the audit was conducted in accordance with Standards on Auditing; (Ref: Para. A28)
   (b) Refers to the section of the auditor’s report that describes the auditor’s responsibilities under the SAs;
   (c) Includes a statement that the auditor is independent of the entity in accordance with the relevant ethical requirements relating to the audit, and has fulfilled the auditor’s other ethical responsibilities in accordance with these requirements. The statement shall refer to the Code of Ethics issued by ICAI(Ref: Para. A29–A34)
   (d) States whether the auditor believes that the audit evidence the auditor has obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for the auditor’s opinion.

   Going Concern

29. Where applicable, the auditor shall report in accordance with SA 570 (Revised).13

   Key Audit Matters

30. For audits of complete sets of general purpose financial statements of listed entities, the auditor shall communicate key audit matters in the auditor’s report in accordance with SA 701.

31. When the auditor is otherwise required by law or regulation or decides to communicate key audit

13 SA 570 (Revised), Going Concern, paragraphs 21–23
matters in the auditor’s report, the auditor shall do so in accordance with SA 701. (Ref: Para. A35– A38)

Responsibilities for the Financial Statements

32. The auditor’s report shall include a section with a heading “Responsibilities of Management for the Financial Statements.” The auditor’s report shall use the term that is appropriate in the context of the legal framework applicable to the entity and need not refer specifically to “management”. In some entities, the appropriate reference may be to those charged with governance. (Ref: Para. A39)

33. This section of the auditor’s report shall describe management’s responsibility for: (Ref: Para. A40– A43)

   (a) Preparing the financial statements in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework, and for such internal control as management determines is necessary to enable the preparation of financial statements that are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error; and

   (b) Assessing the entity’s ability to continue as a going concern\(^{14}\) and whether the use of the going concern basis of accounting is appropriate as well as disclosing, if applicable, matters relating to going concern. The explanation of management’s responsibility for this assessment shall include a description of when the use of the going concern basis of accounting is appropriate. (Ref: Para. A43)

34. This section of the auditor’s report shall also identify those responsible for the oversight of the financial reporting process, when those responsible for such oversight are different from those who fulfill the responsibilities described in paragraph 33 above. In this case, the heading of this section shall also refer to “Those Charged with Governance” or such term that is appropriate in the context of the legal framework applicable to entity. (Ref: Para. A44)

35. When the financial statements are prepared in accordance with a fair presentation framework, the description of responsibilities for the financial statements in the auditor’s report shall refer to “the preparation and fair presentation of these financial statements” or “the preparation of financial statements that give a true and fair view,” as appropriate in the circumstances.

Auditor’s Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Statements

36. The auditor’s report shall include a section with the heading “Auditor’s Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Statements.”

37. This section of the auditor’s report shall: (Ref: Para. A45)

   (a) State that the objectives of the auditor are to:

      (i) Obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements as a whole are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error; and

      (ii) Issue an auditor’s report that includes the auditor’s opinion. (Ref: Para. A46)

   (b) State that reasonable assurance is a high level of assurance, but is not a guarantee that an audit conducted in accordance with SAs will always detect a material misstatement when it exists; and

   (c) State that misstatements can arise from fraud or error, and either:

      (i) Describe that they are considered material if, individually or in the aggregate, they could reasonably be expected to influence the economic decisions of users taken on the basis of these financial statements; or\(^{15}\)

      (ii) Provide a definition or description of materiality in accordance with the applicable financial

---

\(^{14}\) SA 570 (Revised), paragraph 2

\(^{15}\) SA 320, Materiality in Planning and Performing an Audit, paragraph 2
38. The Auditor’s Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Statements section of the auditor’s report shall further: (Ref: Para. A45)

(a) State that, as part of an audit in accordance with SAs, the auditor exercises professional judgment and maintains professional skepticism throughout the audit; and

(b) Describe an audit by stating that the auditor’s responsibilities are:

(i) To identify and assess the risks of material misstatement of the financial statements, whether due to fraud or error; to design and perform audit procedures responsive to those risks; and to obtain audit evidence that is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for the auditor’s opinion. The risk of not detecting a material misstatement resulting from fraud is higher than for one resulting from error, as fraud may involve collusion, forgery, intentional omissions, misrepresentations, or the override of internal control.

(ii) To obtain an understanding of internal control relevant to the audit in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the entity’s internal control. In circumstances when the auditor also has a responsibility to express an opinion on the effectiveness of internal control in conjunction with the audit of the financial statements, the auditor shall omit the phrase that the auditor’s consideration of internal control is not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the entity’s internal control.

(iii) To evaluate the appropriateness of accounting policies used and the reasonableness of accounting estimates and related disclosures made by management.

(iv) To conclude on the appropriateness of management’s use of the going concern basis of accounting and, based on the audit evidence obtained, whether a material uncertainty exists related to events or conditions that may cast significant doubt on the entity’s ability to continue as a going concern. If the auditor concludes that a material uncertainty exists, the auditor is required to draw attention in the auditor’s report to the related disclosures in the financial statements or, if such disclosures are inadequate, to modify the opinion. The auditor’s conclusions are based on the audit evidence obtained up to the date of the auditor’s report. However, future events or conditions may cause an entity to cease to continue as a going concern.

(v) When the financial statements are prepared in accordance with a fair presentation framework, to evaluate the overall presentation, structure and content of the financial statements, including the disclosures, and whether the financial statements represent the underlying transactions and events in a manner that achieves fair presentation.

(c) When SA 600 \(^{16}\) applies, further describe the auditor’s responsibilities in a group audit engagement by stating:

The division of responsibility for the financial information of the entity by including the extent to which the financial information of components is audited by the other auditors have been included in the financial information of the entity, e.g., the number of divisions/branches/subsidiaries or other components audited by other auditors

39. The Auditor’s Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Statements section of the auditor’s report also shall: (Ref: Para. A45)

\(^{16}\) SA 600, Using the Work of Another Auditor.
(a) State that the auditor communicates with those charged with governance regarding, among other matters, the planned scope and timing of the audit and significant audit findings, including any significant deficiencies in internal control that the auditor identifies during the audit;

(b) State that the auditor provides those charged with governance with a statement that the auditor has complied with relevant ethical requirements regarding independence and communicate with them all relationships and other matters that may reasonably be thought to bear on the auditor's independence, and where applicable, related safeguards; and

(c) For audits of financial statements of all such entities for which key audit matters are communicated in accordance with SA 701, state that, from the matters communicated with those charged with governance, the auditor determines those matters that were of most significance in the audit of the financial statements of the current period and are therefore the key audit matters. In accordance with the requirements of SA 701, the auditor describes these matters in the auditor's report unless law or regulation precludes public disclosure about the matter or when, in extremely rare circumstances, the auditor determines that a matter should not be communicated in the auditor's report because the adverse consequences of doing so would reasonably be expected to outweigh the public interest benefits of such communication. (Ref: Para. A48)

Location of the description of the auditor's responsibilities for the audit of the financial statements

40. The description of the auditor's responsibilities for the audit of the financial statements required by paragraphs 38–39 shall be included: (Ref: Para. A49)

(a) Within the body of the auditor's report;

(b) Within an appendix to the auditor's report, in which case the auditor's report shall include a reference to the location of the appendix; or (Ref: Para. A49–A50)

(c) By a specific reference within the auditor's report to the location of such a description on a website of an appropriate authority, where law, regulation or the auditing standards expressly permit the auditor to do so. (Ref: Para. A49, A51–A52)

41. When the auditor refers to a description of the auditor's responsibilities on a website of an appropriate authority, the auditor shall determine that such description addresses, and is not inconsistent with, the requirements in paragraphs 38–39 of this SA. (Ref: Para. A51)

Other Reporting Responsibilities

42. If the auditor addresses other reporting responsibilities in the auditor's report on the financial statements that are in addition to the auditor's responsibilities under the SAs, these other reporting responsibilities shall be addressed in a separate section in the auditor's report with a heading titled "Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements" or otherwise as appropriate to the content of the section, unless these other reporting responsibilities address the same topics as those presented under the reporting responsibilities required by the SAs in which case the other reporting responsibilities may be presented in the same section as the related report elements required by the SAs. (Ref: Para. A53–A55)

43. If other reporting responsibilities are presented in the same section as the related report elements required by the SAs, the auditor's report shall clearly differentiate the other reporting responsibilities from the reporting that is required by the SAs. (Ref: Para. A55)

44. If the auditor's report contains a separate section that addresses other reporting responsibilities, the requirements of paragraphs 20–39 of this SA shall be included under a section with a heading "Report on the Audit of the Financial Statements." The "Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements" shall follow the "Report on the Audit of the Financial Statements." (Ref: Para. A55)
Signature of the Auditor

45. The auditor’s report shall be signed. The report is signed by the auditor (i.e. the engagement partner) in his personal name. Where the firm is appointed as the auditor, the report is signed in the personal name of the auditor and in the name of the audit firm. The partner/proprietor signing the audit report also needs to mention the membership number assigned by the Institute of Chartered Accountants of India. They also include the registration number of the firm, wherever applicable, as allotted by ICAI, in the audit reports signed by them.\(^{17}\) (Ref: Para. A56-A57)

Place of Signature

46. The auditor’s report shall name specific location, which is ordinarily the city where the audit report is signed.

Date of the Auditor’s Report

47. The auditor’s report shall be dated no earlier than the date on which the auditor has obtained sufficient appropriate audit evidence on which to base the auditor’s opinion on the financial statements, including evidence that: (Ref: Para. A58–A61)

(a) All the statements that comprise the financial statements, including the related notes, have been prepared; and

(b) Those with the recognized authority have asserted that they have taken responsibility for those financial statements.

Auditor’s Report Prescribed by Law or Regulation

48. If the auditor is required by law or regulation applicable to the entity to use a specific layout, or wording of the auditor’s report, the auditor’s report shall refer to Standards on Auditing only if the auditor’s report includes, at a minimum, each of the following elements: (Ref: Para. A62–A63)

(a) A title.

(b) An addressee, as required by the circumstances of the engagement.

(c) An Opinion section containing an expression of opinion on the financial statements and a reference to the applicable financial reporting framework used to prepare the financial statements (see paragraph 27).

(d) An identification of the entity’s financial statements that have been audited.

(e) A statement that the auditor is independent of the entity in accordance with the relevant ethical requirements relating to the audit, and has fulfilled the auditor’s other ethical responsibilities in accordance with these requirements. The statement shall refer to the Code of Ethics issued by ICAI.

(f) Where applicable, a section that addresses, and is not inconsistent with, the reporting requirements in paragraph 22 of SA 570 (Revised).

\(^{17}\) The Council of the ICAI, at its 292nd meeting held in January 2010, decided to require the members of the ICAI to include, in addition to the other requirements relating to signature on the audit report, as prescribed under the relevant Standard on Auditing, the registration number of the firm as allotted by ICAI, in the audit reports signed by them, and ensure that the resolution passed by the company regarding appointment of the statutory auditor of the company under section 224 of the Companies Act, 1956, also contain the registration number of the firm of the auditor(s) with the ICAI. These requirements came into effect from April 1, 2010. Subsequently, the Council of the ICAI, at its 296th meeting held in June 2010, decided to extend the requirement to mention the firm registration number to all reports issued pursuant to any attestation engagement, including certificates, issued by the members as proprietor or partner in the said firm. The requirement applies where such firm registration number has been allotted by the ICAI. The Council further decided to make this requirement effective for all attestation reports/ certificates issued on or after 1\(^{st}\) October, 2010.
I.468 Auditing Pronouncements

(g) Where applicable, a Basis for Qualified (or Adverse) Opinion section that addresses, and is not inconsistent with, the reporting requirements in paragraph 23 of SA 570 (Revised).

(h) Where applicable, a section that includes the information required by SA 701, or additional information about the audit that is prescribed by law or regulation and that addresses, and is not inconsistent with, the reporting requirements in that SA. 18 (Ref: Para. A63–A64)

(i) A description of management’s responsibilities for the preparation of the financial statements and an identification of those responsible for the oversight of the financial reporting process that addresses, and is not inconsistent with, the requirements in paragraphs 32–35.

(j) A reference to Standards on Auditing and the law or regulation, and a description of the auditor’s responsibilities for an audit of the financial statements that addresses, and is not inconsistent with, the requirements in paragraphs 36–39. (Ref: Para. A49–A50)

(k) The auditor’s signature.

(l) The Place of signature

(m) The date of the auditor’s report.

Auditor’s Report for Audits Conducted in Accordance with Both Standards on Auditing Issued by ICAI and International Standards on Auditing or Auditing Standards of Any Other Jurisdiction

49. An auditor may be required to conduct an audit in accordance with, in addition to the Standards on Auditing issued by ICAI, the International Standards on Auditing or auditing standards of any other jurisdiction. If this is the case, the auditor’s report may refer to Standards on Auditing in addition to the International Standards on Auditing or auditing standards of such other jurisdiction, but the auditor shall do so only if: (Ref: Para. A68–A69)

(a) There is no conflict between the requirements in the ISAs or such auditing standards of other jurisdiction and those in SAs that would lead the auditor (i) to form a different opinion, or (ii) not to include an Emphasis of Matter paragraph or Other Matter paragraph that, in the particular circumstances, is required by SAs; and

(b) The auditor’s report includes, at a minimum, each of the elements set out in paragraphs 48(a)–(m) above when the auditor uses the layout or wording specified by the Standards on Auditing. However, reference to “law or regulation” in paragraph 48(j) shall be read as reference to the Standards on Auditing. The auditor’s report shall thereby identify such Standards on Auditing.

50. When the auditor’s report refers to both the ISAs or the auditing standards of a specific jurisdiction and the Standards on Auditing issued by ICAI, the auditor’s report shall clearly identify the same including the jurisdiction of origin of the other auditing standards.

Supplementary Information Presented with the Financial Statements (Ref: Para. A70–A76)

51. If supplementary information that is not required by the applicable financial reporting framework is presented with the audited financial statements, the auditor shall evaluate whether, in the auditor’s professional judgment, supplementary information is nevertheless an integral part of the financial statements due to its nature or how it is presented. When it is an integral part of the financial statements, the supplementary information shall be covered by the auditor’s opinion.

52. If supplementary information that is not required by the applicable financial reporting framework is not considered an integral part of the audited financial statements, the auditor shall evaluate whether such supplementary information is presented in a way that sufficiently and clearly differentiates it from the audited

18 SA 701, paragraphs 11–16
financial statements. If this is not the case, then the auditor shall ask management to change how the unaudited supplementary information is presented. If management refuses to do so, the auditor shall identify the unaudited supplementary information and explain in the auditor's report that such supplementary information has not been audited.

***

Application and Other Explanatory Material

Qualitative Aspects of the Entity's Accounting Practices (Ref: Para. 12)

A1. Management makes a number of judgments about the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements.

A2. SA 260 (Revised) contains a discussion of the qualitative aspects of accounting practices.19 In considering the qualitative aspects of the entity's accounting practices, the auditor may become aware of possible bias in management's judgments. The auditor may conclude that the cumulative effect of a lack of neutrality, together with the effect of uncorrected misstatements, causes the financial statements as a whole to be materially misstated. Indicators of a lack of neutrality that may affect the auditor's evaluation of whether the financial statements as a whole are materially misstated include the following:

• The selective correction of misstatements brought to management's attention during the audit (e.g., correcting misstatements with the effect of increasing reported earnings, but not correcting misstatements that have the effect of decreasing reported earnings).

• Possible management bias in the making of accounting estimates.

A3. SA 540 addresses possible management bias in making accounting estimates.20 Indicators of possible management bias do not constitute misstatements for purposes of drawing conclusions on the reasonableness of individual accounting estimates. They may, however, affect the auditor's evaluation of whether the financial statements as a whole are free from material misstatement.

Disclosures of the Effect of Material Transactions and Events on the Information Conveyed in the Financial Statements (Ref: Para. 13(e))

A4. It is common for financial statements prepared in accordance with a general purpose framework to present an entity's financial position, financial performance and cash flows. In such circumstances, the auditor evaluates whether the financial statements provide adequate disclosures to enable the intended users to understand the effect of material transactions and events on the entity's financial position, financial performance and cash flows.

Description of the Applicable Financial Reporting Framework (Ref: Para. 15)

A5. As explained in SA 200, the preparation of the financial statements by management and, where appropriate, those charged with governance requires the inclusion of an adequate description of the applicable financial reporting framework in the financial statements.21 That description advises users of the financial statements of the framework on which the financial statements are based.

A6. A description that the financial statements are prepared in accordance with a particular applicable financial reporting framework is appropriate only if the financial statements comply with all the requirements of that framework that are effective during the period covered by the financial statements.

---

19 SA 260 (Revised), Communication with Those Charged with Governance, Appendix 2
20 SA 540, Auditing Accounting Estimates, Including Fair Value Accounting Estimates, and Related Disclosures, paragraph 21
21 SA 200, paragraphs A2–A3
A7. A description of the applicable financial reporting framework that contains imprecise qualifying or limiting language (e.g., “the financial statements are in substantial compliance with Accounting Standards”) is not an adequate description of that framework as it may mislead users of the financial statements.

Reference to More than One Financial Reporting Framework

A8. In some cases, the financial statements may represent that they are prepared in accordance with two financial reporting frameworks (e.g., Accounting Standards referred to in section 133 of the Companies Act, 2013 and the IFRSs). This may be because management is required, or has chosen, to prepare the financial statements in accordance with both frameworks, in which case both are applicable financial reporting frameworks. Such description is appropriate only if the financial statements comply with each of the frameworks individually. To be regarded as being prepared in accordance with both frameworks, the financial statements need to comply with both frameworks simultaneously and without any need for reconciling statements. In practice, simultaneous compliance is unlikely unless the other framework (e.g., IFRSs) has been adopted as the framework applicable to that entity, or has eliminated all barriers to compliance with it.

A9. Financial statements that are prepared in accordance with one financial reporting framework and that contain a note or supplementary statement reconciling the results to those that would be shown under another framework are not prepared in accordance with that other framework. This is because the financial statements do not include all the information in the manner required by that other framework.

A10. The financial statements may, however, be prepared in accordance with one applicable financial reporting framework and, in addition, describe in the notes to the financial statements the extent to which the financial statements comply with another framework (e.g., financial statements prepared in accordance with the Accounting Standards that also describe the extent to which they comply with IFRSs). Such description may constitute supplementary financial information as discussed in paragraph 52 and is covered by the auditor’s opinion if it cannot be clearly differentiated from the financial statements.

Form of Opinion (Ref: Para. 18–19)

A11. There may be cases where the financial statements, although prepared in accordance with the requirements of a fair presentation framework, do not achieve fair presentation. Where this is the case, it may be possible for management to include additional disclosures in the financial statements beyond those specifically required by the framework or, in extremely rare circumstances, to depart from a requirement in the framework in order to achieve fair presentation of the financial statements.

A12. It will be extremely rare for the auditor to consider financial statements that are prepared in accordance with a compliance framework to be misleading if, in accordance with SA 210, the auditor determined that the framework is acceptable.22

Auditor’s Report (Ref: Para. 20)


A14. The Appendix to this SA contains illustrations of auditor’s reports on financial statements, incorporating the elements set out in paragraphs 20–47. With the exception of the Opinion and Basis for Opinion sections, this SA does not establish requirements for ordering the elements of the auditor’s report. However, this SA requires the use of specific headings, which are intended to assist in making auditor’s reports that refer to audits that have been conducted in accordance with SAs more recognizable, particularly in situations where the elements of the auditor’s report are presented in an order that differs from the illustrative auditor’s reports in the Appendix to this SA.

22 SA 210, Agreeing the Terms of Audit Engagements, paragraph 6(a)
Title (Ref: Para. 21)

A15. A title indicating the report is the report of an independent auditor, for example, “Independent Auditor's Report,” distinguishes the independent auditor’s report from reports issued by others.

Addressee (Ref: Para. 22)

A16. Law, regulation or the terms of the engagement may specify to whom the auditor’s report is to be addressed in that particular jurisdiction. The auditor’s report is normally addressed to those for whom the report is prepared, often either to the shareholders or to those charged with governance of the entity whose financial statements are being audited.

Auditor’s Opinion (Ref. Para. 24–26)

Reference to the financial statements that have been audited

A17. The auditor’s report states, for example, that the auditor has audited the financial statements of the entity, which comprise [state the title of each financial statement comprising the complete set of financial statements required by the applicable financial reporting framework, specifying the date or period covered by each financial statement] and notes to the financial statements, including a summary of significant accounting policies.

A18. When the auditor is aware that the audited financial statements will be included in a document that contains other information, such as an annual report, the auditor may consider, if the form of presentation allows, identifying the page numbers on which the audited financial statements are presented. This helps users to identify the financial statements to which the auditor’s report relates.

“Present fairly, in all material respects” or “give a true and fair view”

A19. The phrases “present fairly, in all material respects,” and “give a true and fair view” are regarded as being equivalent. Whether the phrase “present fairly, in all material respects,” or the phrase “give a true and fair view” is used in any particular jurisdiction is determined by the law or regulation governing the audit of financial statements in that jurisdiction, or by generally accepted practice in that jurisdiction. Where law or regulation requires the use of different wording, this does not affect the requirement in paragraph 14 of this SA for the auditor to evaluate the fair presentation of financial statements prepared in accordance with a fair presentation framework.

A20. When the auditor expresses an unmodified opinion, it is not appropriate to use phrases such as “with the foregoing explanation” or “subject to” in relation to the opinion, as these suggest a conditional opinion or a weakening or modification of opinion.

Description of the financial statements and the matters they present

A21. The auditor’s opinion covers the complete set of financial statements as defined by the applicable financial reporting framework. For example, in the case of many general purpose frameworks, the financial statements may include: Balance sheet, Profit and Loss Accounts, a statement of changes in equity, a statement of cash flows, and related notes, which ordinarily comprise a summary of significant accounting policies and other explanatory information. In some entities, additional information may also be considered to be an integral part of the financial statements.

A22. In the case of financial statements prepared in accordance with a fair presentation framework, the auditor’s opinion states that the financial statements present fairly, in all material respects, or give a true and fair view of, the matters that the financial statements are designed to present. For example, in the case of companies under the Companies Act, 2013, the financial statements for financial year 2014-15, prepared in accordance with the Companies (Accounting Standards) Rules, 2006, these matters are present true and fair view of the state of the company’s affairs as at the end of its financial year and profit or loss or cash flow for
the year. Consequently, the […] in paragraph 25 and elsewhere in this SA is intended to be replaced by the words in italics in the preceding sentence when the applicable financial reporting framework is Ind AS/Accounting Standard or, in the case of other applicable financial reporting frameworks, be replaced with words that describe the matters that the financial statements are designed to present.

Description of the applicable financial reporting framework and how it may affect the auditor’s opinion

A23. The identification of the applicable financial reporting framework in the auditor’s opinion is intended to advise users of the auditor’s report of the context in which the auditor’s opinion is expressed; it is not intended to limit the evaluation required in paragraph 14. The applicable financial reporting framework is identified in such terms as:

“….In accordance with the Accounting Standards prescribed under section 133 of the Companies Act, 2013”
or
“….In accordance with the Accounting Standards issued by the Institute of Chartered Accountants of India”

“… in accordance with International Financial Reporting Standards”

A24. When the applicable financial reporting framework encompasses financial reporting standards and legal or regulatory requirements, the framework is identified in such terms as “…in accordance with the Accounting Standards prescribed under section 133 of the Companies Act, 2013”. SA 210 deals with circumstances where there are conflicts between the financial reporting standards and the legislative or regulatory requirements.23

A25. As indicated in paragraph A8, the financial statements may be prepared in accordance with two financial reporting frameworks, which are therefore both applicable financial reporting frameworks. Accordingly, each framework is considered separately when forming the auditor’s opinion on the financial statements, and the auditor’s opinion in accordance with paragraphs 25–27 refers to both frameworks as follows:

(a) If the financial statements comply with each of the frameworks individually, two opinions are expressed: that is, that the financial statements are prepared in accordance with one of the applicable financial reporting frameworks (e.g., in case of a company incorporated in India, the Accounting Standards issued pursuant to section 133 of the Companies Act, 2013) and an opinion that the financial statements are prepared in accordance with the other applicable financial reporting framework (e.g., IFRSs). These opinions may be expressed separately or in a single sentence (e.g., the financial statements are presented fairly, in all material respects […] in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in India and with IFRSs).

(b) If the financial statements comply with one of the frameworks but fail to comply with the other framework, an unmodified opinion can be given that the financial statements are prepared in accordance with the one framework (e.g., in case of a company incorporated in India, the Accounting Standards issued pursuant to section 133 of the Companies Act, 2013) but a modified opinion given with regard to the other framework (e.g., IFRSs) in accordance with SA 705 (Revised).

A26. As indicated in paragraph A10, the financial statements may represent compliance with the applicable financial reporting framework and, in addition, disclose the extent of compliance with another financial reporting framework. Such supplementary information is covered by the auditor’s opinion if it cannot be clearly differentiated from the financial statements (see paragraphs 51–52 and related application material in paragraphs A70–A76). Accordingly,

(a) If the disclosure as to the compliance with the other framework is misleading, a modified opinion is
expressed in accordance with SA 705 (Revised).

(b) If the disclosure is not misleading, but the auditor judges it to be of such importance that it is fundamental to the users’ understanding of the financial statements, an Emphasis of Matter paragraph is added in accordance with SA 706 (Revised), drawing attention to the disclosure.

Basis for Opinion (Ref: Para. 28)

A27. The Basis for Opinion section provides important context about the auditor’s opinion. Accordingly, this SA requires the Basis for Opinion section to directly follow the Opinion section in the auditor’s report.

A28. The reference to the standards used conveys to the users of the auditor’s report that the audit has been conducted in accordance with established standards.

Relevant ethical requirements

A29. The identification of the applicable relevant ethical requirements increases transparency about those requirements relating to the particular audit engagement. SA 200 explains that relevant ethical requirements ordinarily comprise of Code of Ethics issued by the Institute of Chartered Accountants of India. When the relevant ethical requirements include those of the Code of Ethics, the statement may also make reference to the Code of Ethics. If the Code of Ethics related to an audit of financial statements constitutes all of the ethical requirements relevant to the audit, the statement need not identify a jurisdiction of origin.

A30. Relevant ethical requirements may exist in several different sources, such as the ethical code(s) and additional rules and requirements within law and regulation. When the independence and other relevant ethical requirements are contained in a limited number of sources, the auditor may choose to name the relevant source(s) (e.g., the name of the code, rule or regulation applicable in the jurisdiction), or may refer to a term that is commonly understood and that appropriately summarizes those sources (e.g., independence requirements for audits of private entities in Jurisdiction X).

A31. Law or regulation, applicable auditing standards or the terms of an audit engagement may require the auditor to provide in the auditor’s report more specific information about the sources of the relevant ethical requirements, including those pertaining to independence that applied to the audit of the financial statements.

A32. In determining the appropriate amount of information to include in the auditor’s report when there are multiple sources of relevant ethical requirements relating to the audit of the financial statements, an important consideration is balancing transparency against the risk of obscuring other useful information in the auditor’s report.

Considerations specific to group audits

A33. In group audits when there are multiple sources of relevant ethical requirements, including those pertaining to independence, the reference in the auditor’s report to the relevant ethical requirements refers to those that are applicable to the principal auditor.

A34. The SAs do not establish specific independence or ethical requirements for auditors, including component auditors, and thus do not extend, or otherwise override, the independence requirements of the ICAI Code of Ethics to which the principal auditor is subject, nor do the SAs require that the component auditor in all cases to be subject to the same specific independence requirements that are applicable to the principal auditor.

Key Audit Matters (Ref: Para. 30)

A35. Law or regulation may require communication of key audit matters for audits of entities other than

---

24 SA 200, paragraph A14

© The Institute of Chartered Accountants of India
listed entities, for example, entities characterized in such law or regulation as public interest entities. A36. The auditor may also decide to communicate key audit matters for other entities, including those that may be of significant public interest, for example because they have a large number and wide range of stakeholders and considering the nature and size of the business. Examples of such entities may include financial institutions (such as banks, insurance companies, and pension funds), and other entities such as charities.

A37. SA 210 requires the auditor to agree the terms of the audit engagement with management and those charged with governance, as appropriate, and explains that the roles of management and those charged with governance in agreeing the terms of the audit engagement for the entity depend on the governance arrangements of the entity and relevant law or regulation. SA 210 also requires the audit engagement letter or other suitable form of written agreement to include reference to the expected form and content of any reports to be issued by the auditor. When the auditor is not otherwise required to communicate key audit matters, SA 210 explains that it may be helpful for the auditor to make reference in the terms of the audit engagement to the possibility of communicating key audit matters in the auditor’s report and, in certain jurisdictions, it may be necessary for the auditor to include a reference to such possibility in order to retain the ability to do so.

Considerations specific to public sector entities

A38. Public sector entities, even where not listed, may be significant due to size, complexity or public interest aspects. In such cases, an auditor of a public sector entity may be required by law or regulation or may otherwise decide to communicate key audit matters in the auditor’s report.

Responsibilities for the Financial Statements (Ref: Para. 32–33)

A39. SA 200 explains the premise, relating to the responsibilities of management and, where appropriate, those charged with governance, on which an audit in accordance with SAs is conducted. Management and, where appropriate, those charged with governance accept responsibility for the preparation of the financial statements in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework, including, where relevant, their fair presentation. Management also accepts responsibility for such internal control as it determines is necessary to enable the preparation of financial statements that are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error. The description of management’s responsibilities in the auditor’s report includes reference to both responsibilities as it helps to explain to users the premise on which an audit is conducted. SA 260 (Revised) uses the term those charged with governance to describe the person(s) or organization(s) with responsibility for overseeing the entity, and provides a discussion about the diversity of governance structures across jurisdictions and by entity.

A40. There may be circumstances when it is appropriate for the auditor to add to the descriptions of the responsibilities of management and those charged with governance in paragraphs 33–34 to reflect additional responsibilities that are relevant to the preparation of the financial statements in the context of the particular jurisdiction or the nature of the entity.

A41. SA 210 requires the auditor to agree management’s responsibilities in an engagement letter or other

---

25 SA 210, paragraphs 9 and A 20
26 SA 210, paragraph 10
27 SA 210, paragraph A23a
28 SA 200, paragraph 13(j)
suitable form of written agreement. SA 210 provides some flexibility in doing so, by explaining that, if law or regulation prescribes the responsibilities of management and, where appropriate, those charged with governance in relation to financial reporting, the auditor may determine that the law or regulation includes responsibilities that, in the auditor’s judgment, are equivalent in effect to those set out in SA 210. For such responsibilities that are equivalent, the auditor may use the wording of the law or regulation to describe them in the engagement letter or other suitable form of written agreement. In such cases, this wording may also be used in the auditor's report to describe the responsibilities as required by paragraph 33(a) of this SA. In other circumstances, including where the auditor decides not to use the wording of law or regulation as incorporated in the engagement letter, the wording in paragraph 33(a) of this SA is used. In addition to including the description of management’s responsibilities in the auditor’s report as required by paragraph 33, the auditor may refer to a more detailed description of these responsibilities by including a reference to where such information may be obtained (e.g., in the annual report of the entity or a website of an appropriate authority).

A42. In some entities, law or regulation prescribing management’s responsibilities may specifically refer to a responsibility for the adequacy of accounting books and records, or accounting system. As books, records and systems are an integral part of internal control (as defined in SA 315), the descriptions in SA 210 and in paragraph 33 do not make specific reference to them.

A43. The Appendix to this SA provides illustrations of how the requirement in paragraph 33(b) would be applied when Accounting Standards is the applicable financial reporting framework. If an applicable financial reporting framework other than Accounting Standards is used, the illustrative statements featured in the Appendix to this SA may need to be adapted to reflect the application of the other financial reporting framework in the circumstances.

Oversight of the financial reporting process (Ref: Para. 34)

A44. When some, but not all, of the individuals involved in the oversight of the financial reporting process are also involved in preparing the financial statements, the description as required by paragraph 34 of this SA may need to be modified to appropriately reflect the particular circumstances of the entity. When individuals responsible for the oversight of the financial reporting process are the same as those responsible for the preparation of the financial statements, no reference to oversight responsibilities is required.

Auditor’s Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Statements (Ref: Para. 36–39)

A45. The description of the auditor’s responsibilities as required by paragraphs 36–39 of this SA may be tailored to reflect the specific nature of the entity, for example, when the auditor’s report addresses consolidated financial statements. Illustration 2 in the Appendix to this SA includes an example of how this may be done.

Objectives of the auditor (Ref: Para. 37(a))

A46. The auditor’s report explains that the objectives of the auditor are to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements as a whole are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error, and to issue an auditor’s report that includes the auditor’s opinion. These are in contrast to management’s responsibilities for the preparation for the financial statements.

Description of materiality (Ref: Para. 37(c))

A47. The Appendix to this SA provides illustrations of how the requirement in paragraph 37(c), to provide a
description of materiality, would be applied when Accounting Standards is the applicable financial reporting
government. If an applicable financial reporting framework other than Accounting Standards is used, the
illustrative statements presented in the Appendix to this SA may need to be adapted to reflect the application
of the other financial reporting framework in the circumstances.

Auditor's responsibilities relating to SA 701 (Ref: Para. 39(c))

A48. The auditor may also consider it useful to provide additional information in the description of the
auditor's responsibilities beyond what is required by paragraph 39(c). For example, the auditor may make
reference to the requirement in paragraph 9 of SA 701 to determine the matters that required significant
auditor attention in performing the audit, taking into account areas of higher assessed risk of material
misstatement or significant risks identified in accordance with SA 315; significant auditor judgments relating
to areas in the financial statements that involved significant management judgment, including accounting
estimates that have been identified as having high estimation uncertainty; and the effects on the audit of
significant events or transactions that occurred during the period.

Location of the description of the auditor's responsibilities for the audit of the financial statements (Ref: Para.
40, 48(j))

A49. Including the information required by paragraphs 38–39 of this SA in an appendix to the auditor's
report or, when law, regulation or national auditing standards expressly permit, referring to a website of an
appropriate authority containing such information may be a useful way of streamlining the content of the
auditor's report. However, because the description of the auditor's responsibilities contains information that is
necessary to inform users' expectations of an audit conducted in accordance with SAs, a reference is
required to be included in the auditor's report indicating where such information can be accessed.

Location in an appendix (Ref: Para. 40(b), 48(j))

A50. Paragraph 40 permits the auditor to include the statements required by paragraphs 38–39 describing
the auditor's responsibilities for the audit of the financial statements in an appendix to the auditor's report,
provided that appropriate reference is made within the body of the auditor's report to the location of the
appendix. The following is an illustration of how such a reference to an appendix could be made in the
auditor's report:

**Auditor's Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Statements**

Our objectives are to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements as a whole are
free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error, and to issue an auditor's report that includes
our opinion. Reasonable assurance is a high level of assurance, but is not a guarantee that an audit
conducted in accordance with SAs will always detect a material misstatement when it exists. Misstatements
can arise from fraud or error and are considered material if, individually or in the aggregate, they could
reasonably be expected to influence the economic decisions of users taken on the basis of these financial
statements.

A further description of our responsibilities for the audit of the financial statements is included in appendix X
of this auditor's report. This description, which is located at [indicate page number or other specific reference
to the location of the description], forms part of our auditor's report.

Reference to a website of an appropriate authority (Ref: Para. 40(c), 41)

A51. Paragraph 40 explains that the auditor may refer to a description of the auditor's responsibilities
located on a website of an appropriate authority, only if expressly permitted by law, regulation or the
applicable auditing standards. The information on the website that is incorporated in the auditor's report by
way of a specific reference to the website location where such information can be found may describe the
auditor's work, or the audit in accordance with SAs more broadly, but it cannot be inconsistent with the
description required in paragraphs 38–39 of this SA. This means that the wording of the description of the auditor’s responsibilities on the website may be more detailed, or may address other matters relating to an audit of financial statements, provided that such wording reflects and does not contradict the matters addressed in paragraphs 38–39.

A52. An appropriate authority could be a national auditing standard setter, regulator, or an audit oversight body. Such organizations are well-placed to ensure the accuracy, completeness and continued availability of the standardized information. It would not be appropriate for the auditor to maintain such a website. The following is an illustration of how such a reference to a website could be made in the auditor’s report:

Auditor’s Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Statements

Our objectives are to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements as a whole are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error, and to issue an auditor’s report that includes our opinion. Reasonable assurance is a high level of assurance, but is not a guarantee that an audit conducted in accordance with SAs will always detect a material misstatement when it exists. Misstatements can arise from fraud or error and are considered material if, individually or in the aggregate, they could reasonably be expected to influence the economic decisions of users taken on the basis of these financial statements.

A further description of our responsibilities for the audit of the financial statements is located at [Organization’s] website at: [website address]. This description forms part of our auditor’s report.

Other Reporting Responsibilities (Ref: Para. 42–44)

A53. In case of some entities, the auditor may have additional responsibilities to report on other matters that are supplementary to the auditor’s responsibilities under the SAs. For example, the auditor may be asked to report certain matters if they come to the auditor’s attention during the course of the audit of the financial statements. Alternatively, the auditor may be asked to perform and report on additional specified procedures, or to express an opinion on specific matters, such as the adequacy of accounting books and records, internal control over financial reporting or other information. Standards on Auditing and/or other relevant pronouncements of the ICAI often provide guidance on the auditor’s responsibilities with respect to specific additional reporting responsibilities.

A54. In some cases, the relevant law or regulation may require or permit the auditor to report on these other responsibilities as part of their auditor’s report on the financial statements. In other cases, the auditor may be required or permitted to report on them in a separate report.

A55. Paragraphs 42–44 of this SA permit combined presentation of other reporting responsibilities and the auditor’s responsibilities under the SAs only when they address the same topics and the wording of the auditor’s report clearly differentiates the other reporting responsibilities from those under the SAs. Such clear differentiation may make it necessary for the auditor’s report to refer to the source of the other reporting responsibilities and to state that such responsibilities are beyond those required under the SAs. Otherwise, other reporting responsibilities are required to be addressed in a separate section in the auditor’s report with a heading “Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements.” or otherwise as appropriate to the content of the section. In such cases, paragraph 44 requires the auditor to include reporting responsibilities under the SAs under a heading titled “Report on the Audit of the Financial Statements.”

Signature of the Auditor (Ref: Para 45)

A56. SQC 1\(^1\) requires that the firm establish policies and procedures to provide reasonable assurance that engagements are performed in accordance with professional standards and applicable legal and regulatory

\(^1\) SQC 1, Quality Control for Firms that Perform Audits and Reviews of Historical Financial Information, and Other Assurance and Related Services Engagements, paragraph 3
Audit Pronouncements

requirements. Notwithstanding these SQC 1 requirements, naming the engagement partner in the auditor’s report is intended to provide further transparency to the users of the auditor’s report of a complete set of general purpose financial statements of an entity.

A57. In some cases, law or regulation may allow for the use of electronic signatures in the auditor’s report.

Date of the Auditor's Report (Ref: Para. 47)

A58. The date of the auditor’s report informs the user of the auditor’s report that the auditor has considered the effect of events and transactions of which the auditor became aware and that occurred up to that date. The auditor’s responsibility for events and transactions after the date of the auditor’s report is addressed in SA 560.32

A59. Since the auditor’s opinion is provided on the financial statements and the financial statements are the responsibility of management, the auditor is not in a position to conclude that sufficient appropriate audit evidence has been obtained until evidence is obtained that all the statements that comprise the financial statements, including the related notes, have been prepared and management has accepted responsibility for them.

A60. In the case of some entities, the applicable law or regulation identifies the individuals or bodies (e.g., the directors) that are responsible for concluding that all the statements that comprise the financial statements, including the related notes, have been prepared, and specifies the necessary approval process. In such cases, evidence is obtained of that approval before dating the report on the financial statements. In case of some entities, however, the approval process may not be prescribed in the applicable law or regulation. In such cases, the procedures the entity follows in preparing and finalizing its financial statements in view of its management and governance structures are considered in order to identify the individuals or body with the authority to conclude that all the statements that comprise the financial statements, including the related notes, have been prepared. In some cases, law or regulation identifies the point in the financial statement reporting process at which the audit is expected to be complete.

A61. In the case of some entities, the Final approval of the financial statements by shareholders is required before the financial statements are issued publicly. Final approval by shareholders is not necessary for the auditor to conclude that sufficient appropriate audit evidence has been obtained. The date of approval of the financial statements for purposes of SAs is the earlier date on which those with the recognized authority determine that all the statements that comprise the financial statements, including the related notes, have been prepared and that those with the recognized authority have asserted that they have taken responsibility for them.

Auditor's Report Prescribed by Law or Regulation (Ref: Para 48)

A62. SA 200 explains that the auditor may be required to comply with legal or regulatory requirements in addition to SAs.33 When the differences between the legal or regulatory requirements and SAs relate only to the layout and wording of the auditor’s report, the requirements in paragraph 48(a)–(m) set out the minimum elements to be included in the auditor’s report to enable a reference to the Standards on Auditing. In those circumstances, the requirements in paragraphs 21–47 that are not included in paragraph 48(a)–(n) do not need to be applied including, for example, the required ordering of the Opinion and Basis for Opinion sections.

A63. Where specific requirements in a particular law or regulation do not conflict with SAs, the layout and wording required by paragraphs 21–47 of this SA assist users of the auditor’s report in more readily recognizing the auditor’s report as a report of an audit conducted in accordance with SAs.

Information Required by SA 701 (Ref: Para. 48(h))

---

32 SA 560, Subsequent Events, paragraphs 10–17
33 SA 200, paragraph A55
A64. Law or regulation may require the auditor to provide additional information about the audit that was performed, which may include information that is consistent with the objectives of SA 701, or may prescribe the nature and extent of communication about such matters.

A65. The SAs do not override law or regulation that governs an audit of financial statements. When SA 701 is applicable, reference can only be made to SAs in the auditor's report if, in applying the law or regulation, the section required by paragraph 48(h) of this SA is not inconsistent with the reporting requirements in SA 701. In such circumstances, the auditor may need to tailor certain aspects of the communication of key audit matters in the auditor's report required by SA 701, for example by:

- Modifying the heading “Key Audit Matters”, if law or regulation prescribes a specific heading;
- Explaining why the information required by law or regulation is being provided in the auditor’s report, for example by making a reference to the relevant law or regulation and describing how that information relates to the key audit matters;
- Where law or regulation prescribes the nature and extent of the description, supplementing the prescribed information to achieve an overall description of each key audit matter that is consistent with the requirement in paragraph 13 of SA 701.

A66. SA 210 deals with circumstances where law or regulation applicable to the entity prescribes the layout or wording of the auditor’s report in terms that are significantly different from the requirements of SAs, which in particular includes the auditor’s opinion. In these circumstances, SA 210 requires the auditor to evaluate:

(a) Whether users might misunderstand the assurance obtained from the audit of the financial statements and, if so,

(b) Whether additional explanation in the auditor’s report can mitigate possible misunderstanding.

If the auditor concludes that additional explanation in the auditor’s report cannot mitigate possible misunderstanding, SA 210 requires the auditor not to accept the audit engagement, unless required by law or regulation to do so. In accordance with SA 210, an audit conducted in accordance with such law or regulation does not comply with SAs. Accordingly, the auditor does not include any reference in the auditor’s report to the audit having been conducted in accordance with Standards on Auditing.

Considerations specific to public sector entities

A67. Auditors of public sector entities may also have the ability pursuant to law or regulation to report publicly on certain matters, either in the auditor’s report or in a supplementary report, which may include information that is consistent with the objectives of SA 701. In such circumstances, the auditor may need to tailor certain aspects of the communication of key audit matters in the auditor’s report required by SA 701 or include a reference in the auditor’s report to a description of the matter in the supplementary report.

Auditor’s Report for Audits Conducted in Accordance with Both Standards on Auditing issued by ICAI and International Standards on Auditing/ Auditing Standards of Another Jurisdiction (Ref: Para. 49)

A68. The auditor may refer in the auditor’s report to the audit having been conducted in accordance with both the Standards on Auditing issued by ICAI as well as the International Standards on Auditing/auditing standards of another jurisdiction when, in addition to complying with the ISAs/ auditing standards of such other jurisdiction, the auditor complies with each of the SAs relevant to the audit.

A69. A reference to both Standards on Auditing issued by ICAI and the International Standards on Auditing/auditing standards of another jurisdiction is not appropriate if there is a conflict between the requirements in SAs and those ISAs/ auditing standards of such other jurisdiction that would lead the auditor

34 SA 210, paragraph 21
to form a different opinion or not to include an Emphasis of Matter or Other Matter paragraph that, in the particular circumstances, is required by SAs. In such a case, the auditor’s report refers only to the auditing standards (either Standards on Auditing issued by ICAI or ISAs/the auditing standards of such other jurisdiction) in accordance with which the auditor’s report has been prepared.

Supplementary Information Presented with the Financial Statements (Ref: Para. 51-52)
A70. In some circumstances, the entity may be required by law, regulation or standards, or may voluntarily choose, to present together with the financial statements supplementary information that is not required by the applicable financial reporting framework. For example, supplementary information might be presented to enhance a user’s understanding of the applicable financial reporting framework or to provide further explanation of specific financial statement items. Such information is normally presented in either supplementary schedules or as additional notes.

A71. Paragraph 51 of this SA explains that the auditor’s opinion covers supplementary information that is an integral part of the financial statements because of its nature or how it is presented. This evaluation is a matter of professional judgment. To illustrate:

- When the notes to the financial statements include an explanation or the reconciliation of the extent to which the financial statements comply with another financial reporting framework, the auditor may consider this to be supplementary information that cannot be clearly differentiated from the financial statements. The auditor’s opinion would also cover notes or supplementary schedules that are cross-referenced from the financial statements.

- When an additional profit and loss account that discloses specific items of expenditure is disclosed as a separate schedule included as an Appendix to the financial statements, the auditor may consider this to be supplementary information that can be clearly differentiated from the financial statements.

A72. Supplementary information that is covered by the auditor’s opinion does not need to be specifically referred to in the auditor’s report when the reference to the notes in the description of the statements that comprise the financial statements in the auditor’s report is sufficient.

A73. Law or regulation may not require that the supplementary information be audited, and management may decide to ask the auditor not to include the supplementary information within the scope of the audit of the financial statements.

A74. The auditor’s evaluation whether unaudited supplementary information is presented in a manner that could be construed as being covered by the auditor’s opinion includes, for example, where that information is presented in relation to the financial statements and any audited supplementary information, and whether it is clearly labeled as “unaudited.”

A75. Management could change the presentation of unaudited supplementary information that could be construed as being covered by the auditor’s opinion, for example, by:

- Removing any cross-references from the financial statements to unaudited supplementary schedules or unaudited notes so that the demarcation between the audited and unaudited information is sufficiently clear.

- Placing the unaudited supplementary information outside of the financial statements or, if that is not possible in the circumstances, at a minimum placing the unaudited notes together at the end of the required notes to the financial statements and clearly labeling them as unaudited. Unaudited notes that are intermingled with the audited notes can be misinterpreted as being audited.

A76. The fact that supplementary information is unaudited does not relieve the auditor of the responsibilities described in Proposed SA 720 (Revised).

35 Proposed SA 720 (Revised), The Auditor’s Responsibilities Relating to Other Information
Appendix
(Ref: Para. A14)

Illustrations of Independent Auditor’s Reports on Financial Statements

- Illustration 1: An auditor’s report on financial statements of a listed entity prepared in accordance with a fair presentation framework
- Illustration 2: An auditor’s report on consolidated financial statements of a listed company prepared in accordance with a fair presentation framework
- Illustration 4 – Auditor’s Report on Financial Statements of a Non Corporate Entity Prepared in Accordance with a Fair Presentation Framework
- Illustration 5 – Auditor’s Report on Financial Statements of Non Corporate Entity Prepared in Accordance with a General Purpose Compliance Framework


For purposes of this illustrative auditor’s report, the following circumstances are assumed:

- Audit of a complete set of financial statements of a listed company (registered under the Companies Act, 2013) using a fair presentation framework. The audit is not a group audit (i.e., SA 600 does not apply).
- The financial statements are prepared by management of the entity in accordance with the accounting Standards prescribed under section 133 of the Companies Act, 2013.
- The terms of the audit engagement reflect the description of management’s responsibility for the financial statements in SA 210.
- The auditor has concluded an unmodified (i.e., “clean”) opinion is appropriate based on the audit evidence obtained.
- The relevant ethical requirements that apply to the audit comprise the Code of Ethics issued by ICAI together with the other relevant ethical requirements relating to the audit and the auditor refers to both.
- Based on the audit evidence obtained, the auditor has concluded that a material uncertainty does not exist related to events or conditions that may cast significant doubt on the entity’s ability to continue as a going concern in accordance with SA 570 (Revised).
- Key audit matters have been communicated in accordance with SA 701.
- Those responsible for oversight of the financial statements differ from those responsible for the preparation of the financial statements.
- In addition to the audit of the financial statements, the auditor has other reporting responsibilities required under the Companies Act, 2013.
INDEPENDENT AUDITOR’S REPORT
To the Members of ABC Company Limited

Report on the Audit of the Standalone Financial Statements

Opinion
We have audited the standalone financial statements of ABC Company Limited (“the Company”), which comprise the balance sheet as at 31st March 20XX, and the statement of Profit and Loss, (statement of changes in equity)² and statement of cash flows for the year then ended, and notes to the financial statements, including a summary of significant accounting policies and other explanatory information [in which are included the Returns for the year ended on that date audited by the branch auditors of the Company’s branches located at (location of branches)]³.

In our opinion and to the best of our information and according to the explanations given to us, the aforesaid standalone financial statements give the information required by the Act in the manner so required and give a true and fair view in conformity with the accounting principles generally accepted in India, of the state of affairs of the Company as at March 31, 20XX, and profit/loss, (changes in equity)⁴ and its cash flows for the year ended on that date.

Basis for Opinion
We conducted our audit in accordance with the Standards on Auditing (SAs) specified under section 143(10) of the Companies Act, 2013. Our responsibilities under those Standards are further described in the Auditor’s Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Statements section of our report. We are independent of the Company in accordance with the Code of Ethics issued by the Institute of Chartered Accountants of India together with the ethical requirements that are relevant to our audit of the financial statements under the provisions of the Companies Act, 2013 and the Rules thereunder, and we have fulfilled our other ethical responsibilities in accordance with these requirements and the Code of Ethics. We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our opinion.

Key Audit Matters
Key audit matters are those matters that, in our professional judgment, were of most significance in our audit of the financial statements of the current period. These matters were addressed in the context of our audit of the financial statements as a whole, and in forming our opinion thereon, and we do not provide a separate opinion on these matters.

[Description of each key audit matter in accordance with SA 701.]

Management’s Responsibility for the Standalone Financial Statements
The Company’s Board of Directors is responsible for the matters stated in section 134(5) of the Companies Act, 2013 (“the Act”) with respect to the preparation of these standalone financial statements that give a true and fair view of the financial position, financial performance, (changes in equity)⁵ and cash flows of the

1 The sub-title “Report on the Audit of the Standalone Financial Statements” is unnecessary in circumstances when the second sub-title “Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements” is not applicable.
2 Where applicable.
3 Where applicable.
4 Where applicable.
5 Where applicable.
Company in accordance with the accounting principles generally accepted in India, including the accounting Standards specified under section 133 of the Act. This responsibility also includes maintenance of adequate accounting records in accordance with the provisions of the Act for safeguarding of the assets of the Company and for preventing and detecting frauds and other irregularities; selection and application of appropriate implementation and maintenance of accounting policies; making judgments and estimates that are reasonable and prudent; and design, implementation and maintenance of adequate internal financial controls, that were operating effectively for ensuring the accuracy and completeness of the accounting records, relevant to the preparation and presentation of the financial statement that give a true and fair view and are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error.

In preparing the financial statements, management is responsible for assessing the Company's ability to continue as a going concern, disclosing, as applicable, matters related to going concern and using the going concern basis of accounting unless management either intends to liquidate the Company or to cease operations, or has no realistic alternative but to do so.

Those Board of Directors are also responsible for overseeing the Company's financial reporting process.

**Auditor's Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Statements**

Our objectives are to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements as a whole are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error, and to issue an auditor's report that includes our opinion. Reasonable assurance is a high level of assurance, but is not a guarantee that an audit conducted in accordance with SAs will always detect a material misstatement when it exists. Misstatements can arise from fraud or error and are considered material if, individually or in the aggregate, they could reasonably be expected to influence the economic decisions of users taken on the basis of these financial statements.

Paragraph 40(b) of this SA explains that the shaded material below can be located in an Appendix to the auditor's report. Paragraph 40(c) explains that when law, regulation or applicable auditing standards expressly permit, reference can be made to a website of an appropriate authority that contains the description of the auditor's responsibilities, rather than including this material in the auditor's report, provided that the description on the website addresses, and is not inconsistent with, the description of the auditor's responsibilities below.

As part of an audit in accordance with SAs, we exercise professional judgment and maintain professional skepticism throughout the audit. We also:

- Identify and assess the risks of material misstatement of the financial statements, whether due to fraud or error, design and perform audit procedures responsive to those risks, and obtain audit evidence that is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our opinion. The risk of not detecting a material misstatement resulting from fraud is higher than for one resulting from error, as fraud may involve collusion, forgery, intentional omissions, misrepresentations, or the override of internal control.

- Obtain an understanding of internal control relevant to the audit in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances. Under section 143(3)(i) of the Companies Act, 2013, we are also responsible for expressing our opinion on whether the company has adequate internal financial controls system in place and the operating effectiveness of such controls.

- Evaluate the appropriateness of accounting policies used and the reasonableness of accounting estimates and related disclosures made by management.

---

6 Where management’s responsibility is to prepare financial statements that give a true and fair view, this may read: “Management is responsible for the preparation of financial statements that give a true and fair view in accordance with International Financial Reporting Standards, and for such ...”
Conclude on the appropriateness of management’s use of the going concern basis of accounting and, based on the audit evidence obtained, whether a material uncertainty exists related to events or conditions that may cast significant doubt on the Company’s ability to continue as a going concern. If we conclude that a material uncertainty exists, we are required to draw attention in our auditor’s report to the related disclosures in the financial statements or, if such disclosures are inadequate, to modify our opinion. Our conclusions are based on the audit evidence obtained up to the date of our auditor’s report. However, future events or conditions may cause the Company to cease to continue as a going concern.

Evaluate the overall presentation, structure and content of the financial statements, including the disclosures, and whether the financial statements represent the underlying transactions and events in a manner that achieves fair presentation.

We communicate with those charged with governance regarding, among other matters, the planned scope and timing of the audit and significant audit findings, including any significant deficiencies in internal control that we identify during our audit.

We also provide those charged with governance with a statement that we have complied with relevant ethical requirements regarding independence, and to communicate with them all relationships and other matters that may reasonably be thought to bear on our independence, and where applicable, related safeguards.

From the matters communicated with those charged with governance, we determine those matters that were of most significance in the audit of the financial statements of the current period and are therefore the key audit matters. We describe these matters in our auditor’s report unless law or regulation precludes public disclosure about the matter or when, in extremely rare circumstances, we determine that a matter should not be communicated in our report because the adverse consequences of doing so would reasonably be expected to outweigh the public interest benefits of such communication.

Other Matter
We did not audit the financial statements/ information of ................. (number) branches included in the stand alone financial statements of the Company whose financial statements/financial information reflect total assets of Rs. ................. as at 31st March 20XX and the total revenue of Rs. ................. for the year ended on that date, as considered in the standalone financial statements/information of these branches have been audited by the branch auditors whose reports have been furnished to us, and our opinion in so far as it relates to the amounts and disclosures included in respect of branches, is based solely on the report of such branch auditors.

Our opinion is not modified in respect of these matters.

Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements
As required by the Companies (Auditor’s Report) Order, 2016 (“the Order”), issued by the Central Government of India in terms of sub-section (11) of section 143 of the Companies Act, 2013, we give in the Annexure a statement on the matters specified in paragraphs 3 and 4 of the Order, to the extent applicable.

As required by Section 143(3) of the Act, we report that:

(a) We have sought and obtained all the information and explanations which to the best of our knowledge and belief were necessary for the purposes of our audit.
Part I: Engagement and Quality Control Standards

(b) In our opinion, proper books of account as required by law have been kept by the Company so far as it appears from our examination of those books and proper returns adequate for the purposes of our audit have been received from the branches not visited by us.

(c) The reports on the accounts of the branch offices of the Company audited under Section 143(8) of the Act by branch auditors have been sent to us and have been properly dealt with by us in preparing this report.

(d) The Balance Sheet, the Statement of Profit and Loss, and the Cash Flow Statement dealt with by this Report are in agreement with the books of account and with the returns received from the branches not visited by us.

(e) In our opinion, the aforesaid standalone financial statements comply with the Accounting Standards specified under Section 133 of the Act, read with Rule 7 of the Companies (Accounts) Rules, 2014.

(f) On the basis of the written representations received from the directors as on 31st March, 20XX taken on record by the Board of Directors, none of the directors is disqualified as on 31st March, 20XX from being appointed as a director in terms of Section 164 (2) of the Act.

(g) With respect to the adequacy of the internal financial controls over financial reporting of the Company and the operating effectiveness of such controls, refer to our separate Report in “Annexure A”.

(h) With respect to the other matters to be included in the Auditor’s Report in accordance with Rule 11 of the Companies (Audit and Auditors) Rules, 2014, in our opinion and to the best of our information and according to the explanations given to us:

i. The Company has disclosed the impact of pending litigations on its financial position in its financial statements — Refer Note XX to the financial statements; or the Company does not have any pending litigations which would impact its financial position.

ii. The Company has made provision, as required under the applicable law or accounting standards, for material foreseeable losses, if any, on long-term contracts including derivative contracts — Refer Note XX to the financial statements; or the Company did not have any long-term contracts including derivative contracts for which there were any material foreseeable losses.

iii. There has been no delay in transferring amounts, required to be transferred, to the Investor Education and Protection Fund by the Company; or, following are the instances of delay in transferring amounts, required to be transferred, to the Investor Education and Protection Fund.

7 Where applicable.
8 Where applicable.
9 Where applicable.
10 As may be applicable.
11 As may be applicable.
I. Auditing Pronouncements

by the Company or there were no amounts which were required to be transferred to the Investor Education and Protection Fund by the Company\(^\text{12}\).

For XYZ & Co
Chartered Accountants
(Firm’s Registration No.)

Signature
(Name of the Member Signing the Audit Report)
(Designation\(^\text{13}\))
(Membership No.
XXXXX)

Place of Signature:
Date:


For purposes of this illustrative auditor’s report, the following circumstances are assumed:

- Audit of a complete set of consolidated financial statements of a listed Company (incorporated under the Companies Act, 2013) using a fair presentation framework. The audit is a group audit of an entity with subsidiaries (i.e., SA 600 applies).
- The consolidated financial statements are prepared by management of the entity in accordance with the Accounting Standards prescribed under section 133 of the Companies Act, 2013 (a general purpose framework).
- The terms of the audit engagement reflect the description of management’s responsibility for the consolidated financial statements in SA 210.
- The auditor has concluded an unmodified (i.e., “clean”) opinion is appropriate based on the audit evidence obtained.
- The Code of Ethics issued by ICAI comprises all of the relevant ethical requirements that apply to the principal auditor in relation to this audit.
- Based on the audit evidence obtained, the principal auditor has concluded that a material uncertainty does not exist related to events or conditions that may cast significant doubt on the entity’s ability to continue as a going concern in accordance with SA 570 (Revised).
- Key audit matters have been communicated in accordance with SA 701.
- Those responsible for oversight of the consolidated financial statements differ from those responsible for the preparation of the consolidated financial statements.
- In addition to the audit of the consolidated financial statements, the principal auditor has other reporting responsibilities required under the Companies Act, 2013.

\(^{12}\) As may be applicable.
\(^{13}\) Partner or Proprietor, as the case may be
INDEPENDENT AUDITOR’S REPORT

To the Members of ABC Company Limited

Report on the Audit of the Consolidated Financial Statements

Opinion

We have audited the accompanying consolidated financial statements of ABC Company Limited (hereinafter referred to as the ‘Holding Company’) and its subsidiaries (Holding Company and its subsidiaries together referred to as “the Group”), its associates and jointly controlled entities, which comprise the consolidated Balance Sheet as at March 31, 20XX, and the consolidated statement of Profit and Loss, (the consolidated statement of changes in equity) and the consolidated cash flows Statement for the year then ended, and notes to the consolidated financial statements, including a summary of significant accounting policies (hereinafter referred to as “the consolidated financial statements”).

In our opinion and to the best of our information and according to the explanations given to us, the aforesaid consolidated financial statements give the information required by the Act in the manner so required and give a true and fair view in conformity with the accounting principles generally accepted in India, of their consolidated state of affairs of the Company as at March 31, 20XX, of consolidated profit/loss, (consolidated changes in equity) and its consolidated cash flows for the year then ended.

Basis for Opinion

We conducted our audit in accordance with the Standards on Auditing (SAs) specified under section 143(10) of the Companies act, 2013. Our responsibilities under those Standards are further described in the Auditor’s Responsibilities for the Audit of the Consolidated Financial Statements section of our report. We are independent of the Group in accordance with the Code of Ethics issued by ICAI, and we have fulfilled our other ethical responsibilities in accordance with the provisions of the Companies Act, 2013. We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our opinion.

Key Audit Matters

Key audit matters are those matters that, in our professional judgment, were of most significance in our audit of the consolidated financial statements of the current period. These matters were addressed in the context of our audit of the consolidated financial statements as a whole, and in forming our opinion thereon, and we do not provide a separate opinion on these matters.

[Description of each key audit matter in accordance with SA 701.]

Responsibilities of Management and Those Charged with Governance for the Consolidated Financial Statements

The Holding Company’s Board of Directors is responsible for the preparation and presentation of these consolidated financial statements in term of the requirements of the Companies Act, 2013 that give a true and fair view of the consolidated financial position, consolidated financial performance and consolidated cash flows of the Group including its Associates and Jointly controlled entities in accordance with the accounting principles generally accepted in India, including the Accounting Standards specified under section 133 of the Act. The respective Board of Directors of the companies included in the Group and of its associates and jointly controlled entities are responsible for maintenance of adequate accounting records in

---

14 The sub-title “Report on the Audit of the Consolidated Financial Statements” is unnecessary in circumstances when the second sub-title “Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements” is not applicable.
15 Where applicable.
16 Where applicable.
I.488 Auditing Pronouncements

accordance with the provisions of the Act for safeguarding the assets of the Group and for preventing and detecting frauds and other irregularities; the selection and application of appropriate accounting policies; making judgments and estimates that are reasonable and prudent; and the design, implementation and maintenance of adequate internal financial controls, that were operating effectively for ensuring accuracy and completeness of the accounting records, relevant to the preparation and presentation of the financial statements that give a true and fair view and are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error, which have been used for the purpose of preparation of the consolidated financial statements by the Directors of the Holding Company, as aforesaid.

In preparing the consolidated financial statements, the respective Board of Directors of the companies included in the Group and of its associates and jointly controlled entities are responsible for assessing the ability of the Group and of its associates and jointly controlled entities to continue as a going concern, disclosing, as applicable, matters related to going concern and using the going concern basis of accounting unless management either intends to liquidate the Group or to cease operations, or has no realistic alternative but to do so.

The respective Board of Directors of the companies included in the Group and of its associates and jointly controlled entities are responsible for overseeing the financial reporting process of the Group and of its associates and jointly controlled entities.

Auditor’s Responsibilities for the Audit of the Consolidated Financial Statements

Our objectives are to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the consolidated financial statements as a whole are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error, and to issue an auditor’s report that includes our opinion. Reasonable assurance is a high level of assurance, but is not a guarantee that an audit conducted in accordance with SAs will always detect a material misstatement when it exists. Misstatements can arise from fraud or error and are considered material if, individually or in the aggregate, they could reasonably be expected to influence the economic decisions of users taken on the basis of these consolidated financial statements.

Paragraph 40(b) of this SA explains that the shaded material below can be located in an Appendix to the auditor’s report. Paragraph 40(c) explains that when law, regulation or the applicable auditing standards expressly permit, reference can be made to a website of an appropriate authority that contains the description of the auditor’s responsibilities, rather than including this material in the auditor’s report, provided that the description on the website addresses, and is not inconsistent with, the description of the auditor’s responsibilities below.

As part of an audit in accordance with SAs, we exercise professional judgment and maintain professional skepticism throughout the audit. We also:

- Identify and assess the risks of material misstatement of the consolidated financial statements, whether due to fraud or error, design and perform audit procedures responsive to those risks, and obtain audit evidence that is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our opinion. The risk of not detecting a material misstatement resulting from fraud is higher than for one resulting from error, as fraud may involve collusion, forgery, intentional omissions, misrepresentations, or the override of internal control.
- Obtain an understanding of internal control relevant to the audit in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances. Under section 143(3)(i) of the Companies Act, 2013, we are also responsible for expressing our opinion on whether the company has adequate internal financial controls system in place and the operating effectiveness of such controls.
- Evaluate the appropriateness of accounting policies used and the reasonableness of accounting estimates and related disclosures made by management.
• Conclude on the appropriateness of management’s use of the going concern basis of accounting and, based on the audit evidence obtained, whether a material uncertainty exists related to events or conditions that may cast significant doubt on the ability of the Group and its associates and jointly controlled entities to continue as a going concern. If we conclude that a material uncertainty exists, we are required to draw attention in our auditor’s report to the related disclosures in the consolidated financial statements or, if such disclosures are inadequate, to modify our opinion. Our conclusions are based on the audit evidence obtained up to the date of our auditor’s report. However, future events or conditions may cause the Group and its associates and jointly controlled entities to cease to continue as a going concern.

• Evaluate the overall presentation, structure and content of the consolidated financial statements, including the disclosures, and whether the consolidated financial statements represent the underlying transactions and events in a manner that achieves fair presentation.

• Obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence regarding the financial information of the entities or business activities within the Group and its associates and jointly controlled entities to express an opinion on the consolidated financial statements. We are responsible for the direction, supervision and performance of the audit of the financial statements of such entities included in the consolidated financial statements of which we are the independent auditors. For the other entities included in the consolidated financial statements, which have been audited by other auditors, such other auditors remain responsible for the direction, supervision and performance of the audits carried out by them. We remain solely responsible for our audit opinion.

We communicate with those charged with governance of the Holding Company and such other entities included in the consolidated financial statements of which we are the independent auditors regarding, among other matters, the planned scope and timing of the audit and significant audit findings, including any significant deficiencies in internal control that we identify during our audit.

We also provide those charged with governance with a statement that we have complied with relevant ethical requirements regarding independence, and to communicate with them all relationships and other matters that may reasonably be thought to bear on our independence, and where applicable, related safeguards.

From the matters communicated with those charged with governance, we determine those matters that were of most significance in the audit of the consolidated financial statements of the current period and are therefore the key audit matters. We describe these matters in our auditor’s report unless law or regulation precludes public disclosure about the matter or when, in extremely rare circumstances, we determine that a matter should not be communicated in our report because the adverse consequences of doing so would reasonably be expected to outweigh the public interest benefits of such communication.

Other Matters

(a) We did not audit the financial statements / financial information of ______ subsidiaries, and ______ jointly controlled entities, whose financial statements / financial information reflect total assets of Rs.______ as at 31st March, 20XX, total revenues of Rs.______ and net cash flows amounting to Rs.______ for the year ended on that date, as considered in the consolidated financial statements. The consolidated financial statements also include the Group’s share of net profit/loss of Rs. _____ for the year ended 31st March, 20XX, as considered in the consolidated financial statements, in respect of ______ associates, whose financial statements / financial information have not been audited by us. These financial statements / financial information have been audited by other auditors whose reports have been furnished to us by the Management and our opinion on the consolidated financial statements, in so far as it relates to the amounts and disclosures included in respect of these subsidiaries, jointly controlled entities and associates, and our report in terms of sub-sections (3) and (11) of Section 143 of
the Act, in so far as it relates to the aforesaid subsidiaries, jointly controlled entities and associates, is based solely on the reports of the other auditors.

(b) We did not audit the financial statements / financial information of _____ subsidiaries and _____ jointly controlled entities, whose financial statements / financial information reflect total assets of Rs.______ as at 31st March, 20XX, total revenues of Rs._______ and net cash flows amounting to Rs.______ for the year ended on that date, as considered in the consolidated financial statements. The consolidated financial statements also include the Group’s share of net profit/loss of Rs. _____ for the year ended 31st March, 20XX, as considered in the consolidated financial statements, in respect of ____ associates, whose financial statements / financial information have not been audited by us. These financial statements / financial information are unaudited and have been furnished to us by the Management and our opinion on the consolidated financial statements, in so far as it relates to the amounts and disclosures included in respect of these subsidiaries, jointly controlled entities and associates, is based solely on such unaudited financial statements / financial information. In our opinion and according to the information and explanations given to us by the Management, these financial statements / financial information are not material to the Group.

Our opinion on the consolidated financial statements, and our report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements below, is not modified in respect of the above matters with respect to our reliance on the work done and the reports of the other auditors and the financial statements / financial information certified by the Management.

Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements

As required by Section 143(3) of the Act, we report, to the extent applicable, that:

(a) We have sought and obtained all the information and explanations which to the best of our knowledge and belief were necessary for the purposes of our audit of the aforesaid consolidated financial statements.

(b) In our opinion, proper books of account as required by law relating to preparation of the aforesaid consolidated financial statements have been kept so far as it appears from our examination of those books and the reports of the other auditors.

(c) The Consolidated Balance Sheet, the Consolidated Statement of Profit and Loss, and the Consolidated Cash Flow Statement dealt with by this Report are in agreement with the relevant books of account maintained for the purpose of preparation of the consolidated financial statements.

(d) In our opinion, the aforesaid consolidated financial statements comply with the Accounting Standards specified under Section 133 of the Act.

(e) On the basis of the written representations received from the directors of the Holding Company as on 31st March, 20XX taken on record by the Board of Directors of the Holding Company and the reports of the statutory auditors of its subsidiary companies, associate companies and jointly controlled companies incorporated in India, none of the directors of the Group companies, its associate companies and jointly controlled companies incorporated in India is disqualified as on 31st March, 20XX from being appointed as a director in terms of Section 164 (2) of the Act.

(f) With respect to the adequacy of internal financial controls over financial reporting of the Group and the operating effectiveness of such controls, refer to our separate report in Annexure.
Part I: Engagement and Quality Control Standards I.491

(g) With respect to the other matters to be included in the Auditor’s Report in accordance with Rule 11 of the Companies (Audit and Auditor’s) Rules, 2014, in our opinion and to the best of our information and according to the explanations given to us:

i. The consolidated financial statements disclose the impact of pending litigations on the consolidated financial position of the Group, its associates and jointly controlled entities—Refer Note XX to the consolidated financial statements.
   Or
   There were no pending litigations which would impact the consolidated financial position of the Group, its associates and jointly controlled entities.17

ii. Provision has been made in the consolidated financial statements, as required under the applicable law or accounting standards, for material foreseeable losses, if any, on long-term contracts including derivative contracts—Refer (a) Note XX to the consolidated financial statements in respect of such items as it relates to the Group, its associates and jointly controlled entities and (b) the Group’s share of net profit/loss in respect of its associates.
   Or
   The Group, its associates and jointly controlled entities did not have any material foreseeable losses on long-term contracts including derivative contracts.18

iii. There has been no delay in transferring amounts, required to be transferred, to the Investor Education and Protection Fund by the Holding Company and its subsidiary companies, associate companies and jointly controlled companies incorporated in India.
   Or
   Following are the instances of delay in transferring amounts, required to be transferred, to the Investor Education and Protection Fund by the Holding Company, and its subsidiary companies, associate companies and jointly controlled companies incorporated in India19.
   Or
   There were no amounts which were required to be transferred to the Investor Education and Protection Fund by the Holding Company, and its subsidiary companies, associate companies and jointly controlled companies incorporated in India20.

Place of Signature: For XYZ & Co
Date: Chartered Accountants
(Firm’s Registration No.)

Signature
(Name of the Member Signing the Audit Report)
(Designation21)
(Membership No. XXXX)

17 Where applicable.
18 Where applicable.
19 Where applicable.
20 Where applicable.
21 Partner or Proprietor

For purposes of this illustrative auditor’s report, the following circumstances are assumed:

- Audit of a complete set of financial statements of an unlisted company (registered under the Companies Act, 2013) using a fair presentation framework. The audit is not a group audit (i.e., SA 600 does not apply).
- The financial statements are prepared by management of the entity in accordance with the accounting Standards prescribed under section 133 of the Companies Act, 2013.
- The terms of the audit engagement reflect the description of management’s responsibility for the financial statements in SA 210.
- The auditor has concluded an unmodified (i.e., “clean”) opinion is appropriate based on the audit evidence obtained.
- The relevant ethical requirements that apply to the audit comprise the Code of Ethics issued by ICAI together with the other relevant ethical requirements relating to the audit and the auditor refers to both.
- Based on the audit evidence obtained, the auditor has concluded that a material uncertainty does not exist related to events or conditions that may cast significant doubt on the entity’s ability to continue as a going concern in accordance with SA 570 (Revised).
- The auditor is not required, and has otherwise not decided, to communicate key audit matters in accordance with SA 701.
- Those responsible for oversight of the financial statements differ from those responsible for the preparation of the financial statements.
- In addition to the audit of the financial statements, the auditor has other reporting responsibilities required under the Companies Act, 2013.

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR’S REPORT

To the Members of ABC Company Limited

Report on the Audit of the Standalone Financial Statements

Opinion

We have audited the standalone financial statements of ABC Company Limited (“the Company”), which comprise the balance sheet as at 31st March 20XX, and the statement of Profit and Loss, (statement of changes in equity) and statement of cash flows for the year then ended, and notes to the financial statements, including a summary of significant accounting policies and other explanatory information [in which are included the Returns for the year ended on that date audited by the branch auditors of the Company’s branches located at (location of branches)]

In our opinion and to the best of our information and according to the explanations given to us, the aforesaid standalone financial statements give the information required by the Act in the manner so required and give a true and fair view in conformity with the accounting principles generally accepted in India, of the state of

---

22 The sub-title “Report on the Audit of the Standalone Financial Statements” is unnecessary in circumstances when the second sub-title “Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements” is not applicable.
23 Where applicable.
24 Where applicable.
affairs of the Company as at March 31, 20XX, and profit/loss, (changes in equity)\(^{25}\) and its cash flows for the year ended on that date.

**Basis for Opinion**

We conducted our audit in accordance with the Standards on Auditing (SAs) specified under section 143(10) of the Companies Act, 2013. Our responsibilities under those Standards are further described in the Auditor's Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Statements section of our report. We are independent of the Company in accordance with the Code of Ethics issued by the Institute of Chartered Accountants of India together with the ethical requirements that are relevant to our audit of the financial statements under the provisions of the Companies Act, 2013 and the Rules thereunder, and we have fulfilled our other ethical responsibilities in accordance with these requirements and the Code of Ethics. We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our opinion.

**Responsibility of Management for Standalone Financial Statements**

The Company’s Board of Directors is responsible for the matters stated in section 134(5) of the Companies Act, 2013 (“the Act”) with respect to the preparation of these standalone financial statements that give a true and fair view of the financial position, financial performance, (changes in equity)\(^{26}\) and cash flows of the Company in accordance with the accounting principles generally accepted in India, including the accounting Standards specified under section 133 of the Act. This responsibility also includes maintenance of adequate accounting records in accordance with the provisions of the Act for safeguarding of the assets of the Company and for preventing and detecting frauds and other irregularities; selection and application of appropriate implementation and maintenance of accounting policies; making judgments and estimates that are reasonable and prudent; and design, implementation and maintenance of adequate internal financial controls, that were operating effectively for ensuring the accuracy and completeness of the accounting records, relevant to the preparation and presentation of the financial statement that give a true and fair view and are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error.

In preparing the financial statements, management is responsible for assessing the Company’s ability to continue as a going concern, disclosing, as applicable, matters related to going concern and using the going concern basis of accounting unless management either intends to liquidate the Company or to cease operations, or has no realistic alternative but to do so.

Those Board of Directors are also responsible for overseeing the company’s financial reporting process.

**Auditor’s Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Statements**

Our objectives are to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements as a whole are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error, and to issue an auditor’s report that includes our opinion. Reasonable assurance is a high level of assurance, but is not a guarantee that an audit conducted in accordance with SAs will always detect a material misstatement when it exists. Misstatements can arise from fraud or error and are considered material if, individually or in the aggregate, they could reasonably be expected to influence the economic decisions of users taken on the basis of these financial statements.

---

\(^{25}\) Where applicable

\(^{26}\) Where applicable.
that the description on the website addresses, and is not inconsistent with, the description of the auditor’s responsibilities below.

As part of an audit in accordance with SAs, we exercise professional judgment and maintain professional skepticism throughout the audit. We also:

- Identify and assess the risks of material misstatement of the financial statements, whether due to fraud or error, design and perform audit procedures responsive to those risks, and obtain audit evidence that is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our opinion. The risk of not detecting a material misstatement resulting from fraud is higher than for one resulting from error, as fraud may involve collusion, forgery, intentional omissions, misrepresentations, or the override of internal control.
- Obtain an understanding of internal control relevant to the audit in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances. Under section 143(3)(i) of the Companies Act, 2013, we are also responsible for expressing our opinion on whether the company has adequate internal financial controls system in place and the operating effectiveness of such controls.
- Evaluate the appropriateness of accounting policies used and the reasonableness of accounting estimates and related disclosures made by management.
- Conclude on the appropriateness of management’s use of the going concern basis of accounting and, based on the audit evidence obtained, whether a material uncertainty exists related to events or conditions that may cast significant doubt on the Company’s ability to continue as a going concern. If we conclude that a material uncertainty exists, we are required to draw attention in our auditor’s report to the related disclosures in the financial statements or, if such disclosures are inadequate, to modify our opinion. Our conclusions are based on the audit evidence obtained up to the date of our auditor’s report. However, future events or conditions may cause the Company to cease to continue as a going concern.
- Evaluate the overall presentation, structure and content of the financial statements, including the disclosures, and whether the financial statements represent the underlying transactions and events in a manner that achieves fair presentation.

We communicate with those charged with governance regarding, among other matters, the planned scope and timing of the audit and significant audit findings, including any significant deficiencies in internal control that we identify during our audit.

We also provide those charged with governance with a statement that we have complied with relevant ethical requirements regarding independence, and to communicate with them all relationships and other matters that may reasonably be thought to bear on our independence, and where applicable, related safeguards.

Other Matter

We did not audit the financial statements/ information of ................. (number) branches included in the standalone financial statements of the company whose financial statements/financial information reflect total assets of Rs. .......as at 31st March 20XX and the total revenue of Rs. ........for the year ended on that date, as considered in the standalone financial statements/information of these branches have been audited by the branch auditors whose reports have been furnished to us, and our opinion in so far as it relates to the amounts and disclosures included in respect of branches, is based solely on the report of such branch auditors.

Our opinion is not modified in respect of these matters.
Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements

As required by the Companies (Auditor's Report) Order, 2016 (“the Order”), issued by the Central Government of India in terms of sub-section (11) of section 143 of the Companies Act, 2013, we give in the Annexure a statement on the matters specified in paragraphs 3 and 4 of the Order, to the extent applicable.

As required by Section 143(3) of the Act, we report that:

We have sought and obtained all the information and explanations which to the best of our knowledge and belief were necessary for the purposes of our audit.

(a) In our opinion, proper books of account as required by law have been kept by the Company so far as it appears from our examination of those books [and proper returns adequate for the purposes of our audit have been received from the branches not visited by us.27]

(b) [The reports on the accounts of the branch offices of the Company audited under Section 143(8) of the Act by branch auditors have been sent to us and have been properly dealt with by us in preparing this report28.]

(c) The Balance Sheet, the Statement of Profit and Loss, and the Cash Flow Statement dealt with by this Report are in agreement with the books of account [and with the returns received from the branches not visited by us29].

(d) In our opinion, the aforesaid standalone financial statements comply with the Accounting Standards specified under Section 133 of the Act, read with Rule 7 of the Companies (Accounts) Rules, 2014.

(e) On the basis of the written representations received from the directors as on 31st March, 20XX taken on record by the Board of Directors, none of the directors is disqualified as on 31st March, 20XX from being appointed as a director in terms of Section 164 (2) of the Act.

(f) With respect to the adequacy of the internal financial controls over financial reporting of the Company and the operating effectiveness of such controls, refer to our separate Report in “Annexure A”.

(g) With respect to the other matters to be included in the Auditor’s Report in accordance with Rule 11 of the Companies (Audit and Auditors) Rules, 2014, in our opinion and to the best of our information and according to the explanations given to us:

i. The Company has disclosed the impact of pending litigations on its financial position in its financial statements – Refer Note XX to the financial statements; [or the Company does not have any pending litigations which would impact its financial position.30]

ii. The Company has made provision, as required under the applicable law or accounting standards, for material foreseeable losses, if any, on long-term contracts including derivative contracts – Refer Note XX to the financial statements; [or the Company did not have any long-term contracts including derivative contracts for which there were any material foreseeable losses.31]

iii. There has been no delay in transferring amounts, required to be transferred, to the Investor Education and Protection Fund by the Company {or, following are the instances of delay in

---

27 Where applicable.
28 Where applicable.
29 Where applicable.
30 As may be applicable.
31 As may be applicable.
transferring amounts, required to be transferred, to the Investor Education and Protection Fund by the Company or there were no amounts which were required to be transferred to the Investor Education and Protection Fund by the Company.\(^{32}\).

For XYZ & Co
Chartered Accountants
(Firm's Registration No.)

Signature
(Name of the Member Signing the Audit Report)
(Designation\(^{33}\))
(Membership No. XXXXX)

Place of Signature:
Date:

**Illustration 4 – Auditor’s Report on Financial Statements of a Non Corporate Entity Prepared in Accordance with a Fair Presentation Framework**

For purposes of this illustrative auditor’s report, the following circumstances are assumed:
- Audit of a complete set of financial statements of a non corporate entity using a fair presentation framework. The audit is not a group audit (i.e., SA 600 does not apply).
- The financial statements are prepared by management of the entity in accordance with the Accounting Standards issued by the Institute of Chartered Accountants of India.
- The terms of the audit engagement reflect the description of management’s responsibility for the financial statements in SA 210.
- The auditor has concluded an unmodified (i.e., “clean”) opinion is appropriate based on the audit evidence obtained.
- The relevant ethical requirements that apply to the audit are the Code of Ethics issued by ICAI.\(^{34}\)
- Based on the audit evidence obtained, the auditor has concluded that a material uncertainty does not exist related to events or conditions that may cast significant doubt on the entity’s ability to continue as a going concern in accordance with SA 570 (Revised).
- The auditor is not required, and has otherwise not decided, to communicate key audit matters in accordance with SA 701.
- Those responsible for oversight of the financial statements differ from those responsible for the preparation of the financial statements.
- The auditor has no other reporting responsibilities required under local law.
- The auditor elects to refer to the description of the auditor’s responsibility included on a website of an appropriate authority.

---

\(^{32}\) As may be applicable.

\(^{33}\) Partner or Proprietor, as the case may be

\(^{34}\) Specify any applicable ethical requirements under the relevant laws or regulations applicable to the entity.
INDEPENDENT AUDITOR’S REPORT

To the Partners of ABC & Associates [or Other Appropriate Addressee]

Opinion

We have audited the financial statements of ABC & Associates (the entity), which comprise the balance sheet at March 31st 20XX, and the profit and loss account, (and statement of cash flows) for the year then ended, and notes to the financial statements, including a summary of significant accounting policies.

In our opinion, the accompanying financial statements give a true and fair view of the financial position of the entity as at March 31, 20XX, and of its financial performance (and cash flows) for the year then ended in accordance with the Accounting Standards issued by the Institute of Chartered Accountants of India (ICAI).

Basis for Opinion

We conducted our audit in accordance with the Standards on Auditing (SAs) issued by ICAI. Our responsibilities under those standards are further described in the Auditor's Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Statements section of our report. We are independent of the entity in accordance with the ethical requirements that are relevant to our audit of the financial statements in [jurisdiction], and we have fulfilled our other ethical responsibilities in accordance with these requirements. We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our opinion.

Responsibilities of Management and Those Charged with Governance for the Financial Statements

Management is responsible for the preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements in accordance with the aforesaid Accounting Standards, and for such internal control as management determines is necessary to enable the preparation of financial statements that are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error.

In preparing the financial statements, management is responsible for assessing the entity's ability to continue as a going concern, disclosing, as applicable, matters related to going concern and using the going concern basis of accounting unless management either intends to liquidate the entity or to cease operations, or has no realistic alternative but to do so.

Those charged with governance are responsible for overseeing the entity's financial reporting process.

Auditor's Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Statements

Our objectives are to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements as a whole are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error, and to issue an auditor's report that includes our opinion. Reasonable assurance is a high level of assurance, but is not a guarantee that an audit conducted in accordance with SAs will always detect a material misstatement when it exists. Misstatements can arise from fraud or error and are considered material if, individually or in the aggregate, they could reasonably be expected to influence the economic decisions of users taken on the basis of these financial

35 Where applicable.
36 Where applicable
37 Or other terms that are appropriate in the context of the legal framework of the particular entity.
I.498 Auditing Pronouncements

A further description of the auditor’s responsibilities for the audit of the financial statements is located at [Organization’s] website at: [website link]. This description forms part of our auditor’s report.

For XYZ & Co
Chartered Accountants
(Firm’s Registration No.)

Signature
(Name of the Member Signing the Audit Report)
(Designation\(^{38}\))
(Membership No. XXXXX)

Place of Signature:
Date:

Illustration 5 – Auditor’s Report on Financial Statements of Non Corporate Entity Prepared in Accordance with a General Purpose Compliance Framework

For purposes of this illustrative auditor’s report, the following circumstances are assumed:

- Audit of a complete set of financial statements of an entity, other than a listed company under the Companies Act 2013, required by law or regulation. The audit is not a group audit (i.e., SA 600 does not apply).
- The financial statements are prepared by management of the entity in accordance with the Financial Reporting Framework (XYZ Laws) of Jurisdiction X (that is, a financial reporting framework, encompassing law or regulation, designed to meet the common financial information needs of a wide range of users, but which is not a fair presentation framework).
- The terms of the audit engagement reflect the description of management’s responsibility for the financial statements in SA 210.
- The auditor has concluded an unmodified (i.e., “clean”) opinion is appropriate based on the audit evidence obtained.
- The relevant ethical requirements that apply to the audit are those of the jurisdiction.
- Based on the audit evidence obtained, the auditor has concluded that a material uncertainty does not exist related to events or conditions that may cast significant doubt on the entity’s ability to continue as a going concern in accordance with SA 570 (Revised).
- The auditor is not required, and has otherwise not decided, to communicate key audit matters in accordance with SA 701.
- Those responsible for oversight of the financial statements differ from those responsible for the preparation of the financial statements.
- The auditor has no other reporting responsibilities required under local law.

\(^{38}\) Partner or Proprietor, as the case may be
INDEPENDENT AUDITOR’S REPORT
[Appropriate Addressee]

Opinion
We have audited the financial statements of ABC & Associates (the entity), which comprise the balance sheet as at March 31, 20X1, and the Profit and Loss Account (and the cash flow statement)\textsuperscript{39} for the year then ended, and notes to the financial statements, including a summary of significant accounting policies.

In our opinion, the accompanying financial statements of the entity are prepared, in all material respects, in accordance with XYZ Laws.

Basis for Opinion
We conducted our audit in accordance with Standards on Auditing (SAs). Our responsibilities under those Standards are further described in the Auditor's Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Statements section of our report. We are independent of the entity in accordance with the ethical requirements that are relevant to our audit of the financial statements, and we have fulfilled our other responsibilities in accordance with these requirements. We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our opinion.

Responsibilities of Management and Those Charged with Governance for the Financial Statements\textsuperscript{40}
Management is responsible for the preparation of the financial statements in accordance with XYZ Law and for such internal control as management determines is necessary to enable the preparation of financial statements that are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error.

In preparing the financial statements, management is responsible for assessing the entity’s ability to continue as a going concern, disclosing, as applicable, matters related to going concern and using the going concern basis of accounting unless management either intends to liquidate the entity or to cease operations, or has no realistic alternative but to do so.

Those charged with governance are responsible for overseeing the entity’s financial reporting process.

Auditor’s Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Statements
Our objectives are to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements as a whole are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error, and to issue an auditor’s report that includes our opinion. Reasonable assurance is a high level of assurance, but is not a guarantee that an audit conducted in accordance with SAs will always detect a material misstatement when it exists. Misstatements can arise from fraud or error and are considered material if, individually or in the aggregate, they could reasonably be expected to influence the economic decisions of users taken on the basis of these financial statements.

\textsuperscript{39} Where applicable.

\textsuperscript{40} Or other terms that are appropriate in the context of the legal framework of the particular entity.
I.500 Auditing Pronouncements

We also:

• Identify and assess the risks of material misstatement of the financial statements, whether due to fraud or error, design and perform audit procedures responsive to those risks, and obtain audit evidence that is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our opinion. The risk of not detecting a material misstatement resulting from fraud is higher than for one resulting from error, as fraud may involve collusion, forgery, intentional omissions, misrepresentations, or the override of internal control.

• Obtain an understanding of internal control relevant to the audit in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the entity’s internal control.41

Evaluate the appropriateness of accounting policies used and the reasonableness of accounting estimates and related disclosures made by management.

• Conclude on the appropriateness of management’s use of the going concern basis of accounting and, based on the audit evidence obtained, whether a material uncertainty exists related to events or conditions that may cast significant doubt on the entity’s ability to continue as a going concern. If we conclude that a material uncertainty exists, we are required to draw attention in our auditor’s report to the related disclosures in the financial statements or, if such disclosures are inadequate, to modify our opinion. Our conclusions are based on the audit evidence obtained up to the date of our auditor’s report. However, future events or conditions may cause the entity to cease to continue as a going concern.

We communicate with those charged with governance regarding, among other matters, the planned scope and timing of the audit and significant audit findings, including any significant deficiencies in internal control that we identify during our audit.

---

41 This sentence would be modified, as appropriate, in circumstances when the auditor also has responsibility to issue an opinion on the effectiveness of internal control in conjunction with the audit of the financial statements.

42 Partner or Proprietor, as the case may be
SA 701
Communicating Key Audit Matters in the Independent Auditor’s Report
(Effective for all audits relating to accounting periods beginning on or after April 1, 2017)

Introduction
Scope of this SA
1. This Standard on Auditing (SA) deals with the auditor’s responsibility to communicate key audit matters in the auditor’s report. It is intended to address both the auditor’s judgment as to what to communicate in the auditor’s report and the form and content of such communication.

2. The purpose of communicating key audit matters is to enhance the communicative value of the auditor’s report by providing greater transparency about the audit that was performed. Communicating key audit matters provides additional information to intended users of the financial statements (“intended users”) to assist them in understanding those matters that, in the auditor’s professional judgment, were of most significance in the audit of the financial statements of the current period. Communicating key audit matters may also assist intended users in understanding the entity and areas of significant management judgment in the audited financial statements. (Ref: Para. A1–A4)

3. The communication of key audit matters in the auditor’s report may also provide intended users a basis to further engage with management and those charged with governance about certain matters relating to the entity, the audited financial statements, or the audit that was performed.

4. Communicating key audit matters in the auditor’s report is in the context of the auditor having formed an opinion on the financial statements as a whole. Communicating key audit matters in the auditor’s report is not:
   (a) A substitute for disclosures in the financial statements that the applicable financial reporting framework requires management to make, or that are otherwise necessary to achieve fair presentation;
   (b) A substitute for the auditor expressing a modified opinion when required by the circumstances of a specific audit engagement in accordance with SA 705 (Revised);¹
   (c) A substitute for reporting in accordance with SA 570 (Revised)² when a material uncertainty exists relating to events or conditions that may cast significant doubt on an entity’s ability to continue as a going concern; or
   (d) A separate opinion on individual matters. (Ref: Para. A5–A8)

5. This SA applies to audits of complete sets of general purpose financial statements of listed entities and circumstances when the auditor otherwise decides to communicate key audit matters in the auditor’s report. This SA also applies when the auditor is required by law or regulation to communicate key audit matters in

¹ SA 705 (Revised), Modifications to the Opinion in the Independent Auditor’s Report.
² SA 570 (Revised), Going Concern, paragraphs 22–23.
the auditor’s report.\(^3\) However, SA 705 (Revised) prohibits the auditor from communicating key audit matters when the auditor disclaims an opinion on the financial statements, unless such reporting is required by law or regulation.\(^4\)

**Effective Date**

6. This SA is effective for audits of financial statements for periods beginning on or after April 1, 2017.

**Objectives**

7. The objectives of the auditor are to determine key audit matters and, having formed an opinion on the financial statements, communicate those matters by describing them in the auditor’s report.

**Definition**

8. For purposes of the SAs, the following term has the meaning attributed below:

**Key audit matters**— Those matters that, in the auditor’s professional judgment, were of most significance in the audit of the financial statements of the current period. Key audit matters are selected from matters communicated with those charged with governance.

**Requirements**

**Determining Key Audit Matters**

9. The auditor shall determine, from the matters communicated with those charged with governance, those matters that required significant auditor attention in performing the audit. In making this determination, the auditor shall take into account the following: (Ref: Para. A9–A18)

(a) Areas of higher assessed risk of material misstatement, or significant risks identified in accordance with SA 315.\(^5\) (Ref: Para. A19–A22)

(b) Significant auditor judgments relating to areas in the financial statements that involved significant management judgment, including accounting estimates that have been identified as having high estimation uncertainty. (Ref: Para. A23–A24)

(c) The effect on the audit of significant events or transactions that occurred during the period. (Ref: Para. A25–A26)

10. The auditor shall determine which of the matters determined in accordance with paragraph 9 were of most significance in the audit of the financial statements of the current period and therefore are the key audit matters. (Ref: Para. A9–A11, A27–A30)

**Communicating Key Audit Matters**

11. The auditor shall describe each key audit matter, using an appropriate subheading, in a separate section of the auditor’s report under the heading “Key Audit Matters,” unless the circumstances in paragraphs 14 or 15 apply. The introductory language in this section of the auditor’s report shall state that:

(a) Key audit matters are those matters that, in the auditor’s professional judgment, were of most significance in the audit of the financial statements [of the current period]; and

(b) These matters were addressed in the context of the audit of the financial statements as a whole, and in forming the auditor’s opinion thereon, and the auditor does not provide a separate opinion on these matters. (Ref: Para. A31–A33)


\(^4\) SA 705 (Revised), paragraph 29.

Key Audit Matters Not a Substitute for Expressing a Modified Opinion

12. The auditor shall not communicate a matter in the Key Audit Matters section of the auditor’s report when the auditor would be required to modify the opinion in accordance with SA 705 (Revised) as a result of the matter. (Ref: Para. A5)

Descriptions of Individual Key Audit Matters

13. The description of each key audit matter in the Key Audit Matters section of the auditor’s report shall include a reference to the related disclosure(s), if any, in the financial statements and shall address: (Ref: Para. A34–A41)

(a) Why the matter was considered to be one of most significance in the audit and therefore determined to be a key audit matter; and (Ref: Para. A42–A45)

(b) How the matter was addressed in the audit. (Ref: Para. A46–A51)

Circumstances in Which a Matter Determined to Be a Key Audit Matter Is Not Communicated in the Auditor’s Report

14. The auditor shall describe each key audit matter in the auditor’s report unless: (Ref: Para. A53–A56)

(a) Law or regulation precludes public disclosure about the matter; or (Ref: Para. A52)

(b) In extremely rare circumstances, the auditor determines that the matter should not be communicated in the auditor’s report because the adverse consequences of doing so would reasonably be expected to outweigh the public interest benefits of such communication. This shall not apply if the entity has publicly disclosed information about the matter.

Interaction between Descriptions of Key Audit Matters and Other Elements Required to Be Included in the Auditor’s Report

15. A matter giving rise to a modified opinion in accordance with SA 705 (Revised), or a material uncertainty related to events or conditions that may cast significant doubt on the entity’s ability to continue as a going concern in accordance with SA 570 (Revised), are by their nature key audit matters. However, in such circumstances, these matters shall not be described in the Key Audit Matters section of the auditor’s report and the requirements in paragraphs 13–14 do not apply. Rather, the auditor shall:

(a) Report on these matter(s) in accordance with the applicable SA(s); and

(b) Include a reference to the Basis for Qualified (Adverse) Opinion or the Material Uncertainty Related to Going Concern section(s) in the Key Audit Matters section. (Ref: Para. A6–A7)

Form and Content of the Key Audit Matters Section in Other Circumstances

16. If the auditor determines, depending on the facts and circumstances of the entity and the audit, that there are no key audit matters to communicate or that the only key audit matters communicated are those matters addressed by paragraph 15, the auditor shall include a statement to this effect in a separate section of the auditor’s report under the heading “Key Audit Matters.” (Ref: Para. A57–A59)

Communication with Those Charged with Governance

17. The auditor shall communicate with those charged with governance:

(a) Those matters the auditor has determined to be the key audit matters; or

(b) If applicable, depending on the facts and circumstances of the entity and the audit, the auditor’s determination that there are no key audit matters to communicate in the auditor’s report. (Ref: Para. A60–A63)
I.504 Auditing Pronouncements

Documentation
18. The auditor shall include in the audit documentation: ⁶ (Ref: Para. A64)

(a) The matters that required significant auditor attention as determined in accordance with paragraph 9, and the rationale for the auditor’s determination as to whether or not each of these matters is a key audit matter in accordance with paragraph 10;

(b) Where applicable, the rationale for the auditor’s determination that there are no key audit matters to communicate in the auditor’s report or that the only key audit matters to communicate are those matters addressed by paragraph 15; and

(c) Where applicable, the rationale for the auditor’s determination not to communicate in the auditor’s report a matter determined to be a key audit matter.

Application and Other Explanatory Material

Scope of this SA (Ref: Para. 2)

A1. Significance can be described as the relative importance of a matter, taken in context. The significance of a matter is judged by the auditor in the context in which it is being considered. Significance can be considered in the context of quantitative and qualitative factors, such as relative magnitude, the nature and effect on the subject matter and the expressed interests of intended users or recipients. This involves an objective analysis of the facts and circumstances, including the nature and extent of communication with those charged with governance.

A2. Users of financial statements have expressed an interest in those matters about which the auditor had the most robust dialogue with those charged with governance as part of the two-way communication required by SA 260 (Revised)⁷ and have called for additional transparency about those communications. For example, users have expressed particular interest in understanding significant judgments made by the auditor in forming the opinion on the financial statements as a whole, because they are often related to the areas of significant management judgment in preparing the financial statements.

A3. Requiring auditors to communicate key audit matters in the auditor’s report may also enhance communications between the auditor and those charged with governance about those matters, and may increase attention by management and those charged with governance to the disclosures in the financial statements to which reference is made in the auditor’s report.

A4. SA 320 ⁸ explains that it is reasonable for the auditor to assume that users of the financial statements:

(a) Have a reasonable knowledge of business and economic activities and accounting and a willingness to study the information in the financial statements with reasonable diligence;

(b) Understand that the financial statements are prepared, presented and audited to levels of materiality;

(c) Recognize the uncertainties inherent in the measurement of amounts based on the use of estimates, judgment and the consideration of future events; and

(d) Make reasonable economic decisions on the basis of the information in the financial statements.

Because the auditor’s report accompanies the audited financial statements, the users of the auditor’s report are considered to be the same as the intended users of the financial statements.

Relationship between Key Audit Matters, the Auditor’s Opinion and Other Elements of the Auditor’s Report

---

⁶ SA 230, Audit Documentation, paragraphs 8–11 and A6.
⁷ SA 260 (Revised), Communication with Those Charged with Governance.
⁸ SA 320, Materiality in Planning and Performing the Audit, paragraph 4.
A5. SA 700 (Revised) establishes requirements and provides guidance on forming an opinion on the financial statements. Communicating key audit matters is not a substitute for disclosures in the financial statements that the applicable financial reporting framework requires management to make, or that are otherwise necessary to achieve fair presentation. SA 705 (Revised) addresses circumstances in which the auditor concludes that there is a material misstatement relating to the appropriateness or adequacy of disclosures in the financial statements.

A6. When the auditor expresses a qualified or adverse opinion in accordance with SA 705 (Revised), presenting the description of a matter giving rise to a modified opinion in the Basis for Qualified (Adverse) Opinion section helps to promote intended users’ understanding and to identify such circumstances when they occur. Separating the communication of this matter from other key audit matters described in the Key Audit Matters section, therefore, gives it the appropriate prominence in the auditor's report (see paragraph 15). The Appendix in SA 705 (Revised) includes illustrative examples of how the introductory language in the Key Audit Matters section is affected when the auditor expresses a qualified or adverse opinion and other key audit matters are communicated in the auditor’s report. Paragraph A58 of this SA illustrates how the Key Audit Matters section is presented when the auditor has determined that there are no other key audit matters to be communicated in the auditor’s report beyond matters addressed in the Basis for Qualified (Adverse) Opinion section or Material Uncertainty Related to Going Concern section of the auditor’s report.

A7. When the auditor expresses a qualified or adverse opinion, communicating other key audit matters would still be relevant to enhancing intended users’ understanding of the audit, and therefore the requirements to determine key audit matters apply. However, as an adverse opinion is expressed in circumstances when the auditor has concluded that misstatements, individually or in the aggregate, are both material and pervasive to the financial statements:

- Depending on the significance of the matter(s) giving rise to an adverse opinion, the auditor may determine that no other matters are key audit matters. In such circumstances, the requirement in paragraph 15 applies (see paragraph A58).
- If one or more matters other than the matter(s) giving rise to an adverse opinion are determined to be key audit matters, it is particularly important that the descriptions of such other key audit matters do not imply that the financial statements as a whole are more credible in relation to those matters than would be appropriate in the circumstances, in view of the adverse opinion (see paragraph A47).

A8. SA 706 (Revised) establishes mechanisms for auditors of financial statements of all entities to include additional communication in the auditor’s report through the use of Emphasis of Matter paragraphs and Other Matter paragraphs when the auditor considers it necessary to do so. In such cases, these paragraphs are presented separately from the Key Audit Matters section in the auditor’s report. When a matter has been determined to be a key audit matter, the use of such paragraphs is not a substitute for the description of the individual key audit matter in accordance with paragraph 13. SA 706 (Revised) provides further guidance on the relationship between key audit matters and Emphasis of Matter paragraphs in accordance with that SA.

---

10 See paragraph A7 of SA 705 (Revised).
11 SA 705(Revised), paragraph 8.
12 SA 706 (Revised), Emphasis of Matter Paragraphs and Other Matter Paragraphs in the Independent Auditor’s Report.
13 See paragraphs 8(b) and 10(b) of SA 706 (Revised).
14 SA 706 (Revised), paragraphs A1–A3.
Determining Key Audit Matters (Ref: Para. 9–10)

A9. The auditor's decision-making process in determining key audit matters is designed to select a smaller number of matters from the matters communicated with those charged with governance, based on the auditor's judgment about which matters were of most significance in the audit of the financial statements of the current period.

A10. The auditor's determination of key audit matters is limited to those matters of most significance in the audit of the financial statements of the current period, even when comparative financial statements are presented (i.e., even when the auditor's opinion refers to each period for which financial statements are presented).15

A11. Notwithstanding that the auditor's determination of key audit matters is for the audit of the financial statements of the current period and this SA does not require the auditor to update key audit matters included in the prior period's auditor's report, it may nevertheless be useful for the auditor to consider whether a matter that was a key audit matter in the audit of the financial statements of the prior period continues to be a key audit matter in the audit of the financial statements of the current period.

Matters that Required Significant Auditor Attention (Ref: Para. 9)

A12. The concept of significant auditor attention recognizes that an audit is risk-based and focuses on identifying and assessing the risks of material misstatement of the financial statements, designing and performing audit procedures responsive to those risks, and obtaining audit evidence that is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for the auditor's opinion. For a particular account balance, class of transactions or disclosure, the higher an assessed risk of material misstatement at the assertion level, the more judgment is often involved in planning and performing the audit procedures and evaluating the results thereof. In designing further audit procedures, the auditor is required to obtain more persuasive audit evidence the higher the auditor's assessment of risk.16 When obtaining more persuasive audit evidence because of a higher assessment of risk, the auditor may increase the quantity of the evidence, or obtain evidence that is more relevant or reliable, for example, by placing more emphasis on obtaining third party evidence or by obtaining corroborating evidence from a number of independent sources.17

A13. Accordingly, matters that pose challenges to the auditor in obtaining sufficient appropriate audit evidence or pose challenges to the auditor in forming an opinion on the financial statements may be particularly relevant in the auditor's determination of key audit matters.

A14. Areas of significant auditor attention often relate to areas of complexity and significant management judgment in the financial statements, and therefore often involve difficult or complex auditor judgments. In turn, this often affects the auditor's overall audit strategy, the allocation of resources and extent of audit effort in relation to such matters. These effects may include, for example, the extent of involvement of senior personnel on the audit engagement or the involvement of an auditor's expert or individuals with expertise in a specialized area of accounting or auditing, whether engaged or employed by the firm to address these areas.

A15. Various SAs require specific communications with those charged with governance and others that may relate to areas of significant auditor attention. For example:

- SA 260 (Revised) requires the auditor to communicate significant difficulties, if any, encountered during the audit with those charged with governance.18 The SA 260 acknowledges potential difficulties in relation

---

15 See SA 710, Comparative Information—Corresponding Figures and Comparative Financial Statements.
16 SA 330, The Auditor's Responses to Assessed Risks, paragraph 7(b).
17 SA 330, paragraph A19.
18 SA 260 (Revised), paragraphs 16(b) and A21.
Part I: Engagement and Quality Control Standards

I.507

to, for example:

- Related party transactions, in particular limitations on the auditor's ability to obtain audit evidence that all other aspects of a related party transaction (other than price) are equivalent to those of a similar arm’s length transaction.

- Limitations on the group audit, for example, where the group engagement team’s access to information may have been restricted.

- SA 220 establishes requirements for the engagement partner in relation to undertaking appropriate consultation on difficult or contentious matters. For example, the auditor may have consulted with others within the firm or outside the firm on a significant technical matter, which may be an indicator that it is a key audit matter. The engagement partner is also required to discuss, among other things, significant matters arising during the audit engagement with the engagement quality control reviewer.

Considerations in Determining Those Matters that Required Significant Auditor Attention (Ref: Para. 9)

A16. The auditor may develop a preliminary view at the planning stage about matters that are likely to be areas of significant auditor attention in the audit and therefore may be key audit matters. The auditor may communicate this with those charged with governance when discussing the planned scope and timing of the audit in accordance with SA 260 (Revised). However, the auditor’s determination of key audit matters is based on the results of the audit or evidence obtained throughout the audit.

A17. Paragraph 9 includes specific required considerations in the auditor’s determination of those matters that required significant auditor attention. These considerations focus on the nature of matters communicated with those charged with governance that are often linked to matters disclosed in the financial statements, and are intended to reflect areas of the audit of the financial statements that may be of particular interest to intended users. The fact that these considerations are required is not intended to imply that matters related to them are always key audit matters; rather, matters related to such specific considerations are key audit matters only if they are determined to be of most significance in the audit in accordance with paragraph 10. As the considerations may be interrelated (e.g., matters relating to the circumstances described in paragraphs 9(b)-(c) may also be identified as significant risks), the applicability of more than one of the considerations to a particular matter communicated with those charged with governance may increase the likelihood of the auditor identifying that matter as a key audit matter.

A18. In addition to matters that relate to the specific required considerations in paragraph 9, there may be other matters communicated with those charged with governance that required significant auditor attention and that therefore may be determined to be key audit matters in accordance with paragraph 10. Such matters may include, for example, matters relevant to the audit that was performed that may not be required to be disclosed in the financial statements. For example, the implementation of a new IT system (or significant changes to an existing IT system) during the period may be an area of significant auditor attention, in particular if such a change had a significant effect on the auditor’s overall audit strategy or related to a significant risk (e.g., changes to a system affecting revenue recognition).

Areas of Higher Assessed Risk of Material Misstatement, or Significant Risks Identified in Accordance with SA 315 (Ref: Para. 9(a))

A19. SA 260 (Revised) requires the auditor to communicate with those charged with governance about the

---

19 SA 550, Related Parties, paragraph A42.
20 SA 600, Using the work of Another Auditor.
21 SA 220, Quality Control for an Audit of Financial Statements, paragraph 18.
22 SA 220, paragraph 19.
significant risks identified by the auditor.23 Paragraph A13 of SA 260 (Revised) explains that the auditor may also communicate with those charged with governance about how the auditor plans to address areas of higher assessed risks of material misstatement.

A20. SA 315 defines a significant risk as an identified and assessed risk of material misstatement that, in the auditor’s judgment, requires special audit consideration. Areas of significant management judgment and significant unusual transactions may often be identified as significant risks. Significant risks are therefore often areas that require significant auditor attention.

A21. However, this may not be the case for all significant risks. For example, SA 240 presumes that there are risks of fraud in revenue recognition and requires the auditor to treat those assessed risks of material misstatement due to fraud as significant risks.24 In addition, SA 240 indicates that, due to the unpredictable way in which management override of controls could occur, it is a risk of material misstatement due to fraud and thus a significant risk.25 Depending on their nature, these risks may not require significant auditor attention, and therefore would not be considered in the auditor’s determination of key audit matters in accordance with paragraph 10.

A22. SA 315 explains that the auditor’s assessment of the risks of material misstatement at the assertion level may change during the course of the audit as additional audit evidence is obtained.26 Revision to the auditor’s risk assessment and reevaluation of the planned audit procedures with respect to a particular area of the financial statements (i.e., a significant change in the audit approach, for example, if the auditor’s risk assessment was based on an expectation that certain controls were operating effectively and the auditor has obtained audit evidence that they were not operating effectively throughout the audit period, particularly in an area with higher assessed risk of material misstatement) may result in an area being determined as one requiring significant auditor attention.

Significant Auditor Judgments Relating to Areas in the Financial Statements that Involved Significant Management Judgment, Including Accounting Estimates that Have Been Identified as Having High Estimation Uncertainty (Ref: Para. 9(b))

A23. SA 260 (Revised) requires the auditor to communicate with those charged with governance the auditor’s views about significant qualitative aspects of the entity’s accounting practices, including accounting policies, accounting estimates and financial statement disclosures.27 In many cases, this relates to critical accounting estimates and related disclosures, which are likely to be areas of significant auditor attention, and also may be identified as significant risks.

A24. However, users of the financial statements have highlighted their interest in accounting estimates that have been identified as having high estimation uncertainty in accordance with SA 54028 that may have not been determined to be significant risks. Among other things, such estimates are highly dependent on management judgment and are often the most complex areas of the financial statements, and may require the involvement of both a management’s expert and an auditor’s expert. Users have also highlighted that accounting policies that have a significant effect on the financial statements (and significant changes to those policies) are relevant to their understanding of the financial statements, especially in circumstances where an

23 SA 260 (Revised), paragraph 15.
25 SA 240, paragraph 31.
26 SA 315, Identifying and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement through understanding the Entity and its environment, paragraph 31.
27 SA 260 (Revised), paragraph 16(a).
entity’s practices are not consistent with others in its industry.

The Effect on the Audit of Significant Events or Transactions that Occurred during the Period (Ref: Para. 9(c))

A25. Events or transactions that had a significant effect on the financial statements or the audit may be areas of significant auditor attention and may be identified as significant risks. For example, the auditor may have had extensive discussions with management and those charged with governance at various stages throughout the audit about the effect on the financial statements of significant transactions with related parties or significant transactions that are outside the normal course of business for the entity or that otherwise appear to be unusual. Management may have made difficult or complex judgments in relation to recognition, measurement, presentation or disclosure of such transactions, which may have had a significant effect on the auditor’s overall strategy.

A26. Significant economic, accounting, regulatory, industry, or other developments that affected management’s assumptions or judgments may also affect the auditor’s overall approach to the audit and result in a matter requiring significant auditor attention.

Matters of Most Significance (Ref: Para. 10)

A27. Matters that required significant auditor attention also may have resulted in significant interaction with those charged with governance. The nature and extent of communication about such matters with those charged with governance often provides an indication of which matters are of most significance in the audit. For example, the auditor may have had more in-depth, frequent or robust interactions with those charged with governance on more difficult and complex matters, such as the application of significant accounting policies that were the subject of significant auditor or management judgment.

A28. The concept of matters of most significance is applicable in the context of the entity and the audit that was performed. As such, the auditor’s determination and communication of key audit matters is intended to identify matters specific to the audit and to involve making a judgment about their importance relative to other matters in the audit.

A29. Other considerations that may be relevant to determining the relative significance of a matter communicated with those charged with governance and whether such a matter is a key audit matter include:

- The importance of the matter to intended users’ understanding of the financial statements as a whole, in particular, its materiality to the financial statements.
- The nature of the underlying accounting policy relating to the matter or the complexity or subjectivity involved in management’s selection of an appropriate policy compared to other entities within its industry.
- The nature and materiality, quantitatively or qualitatively, of corrected and accumulated uncorrected misstatements due to fraud or error related to the matter, if any.
- The nature and extent of audit effort needed to address the matter, including:
  - The extent of specialized skill or knowledge needed to apply audit procedures to address the matter or evaluate the results of those procedures, if any.
  - The nature of consultations outside the engagement team regarding the matter.
- The nature and severity of difficulties in applying audit procedures, evaluating the results of those procedures, and obtaining relevant and reliable evidence on which to base the auditor’s opinion, in particular as the auditor’s judgments become more subjective.

29 See paragraphs 16(a), 16(c) and A22, and Appendix 2 of SA 260 (Revised).
The severity of any control deficiencies identified relevant to the matter.

Whether the matter involved a number of separate, but related, auditing considerations. For example, long-term contracts may involve significant auditor attention with respect to revenue recognition, litigation or other contingencies, and may have an effect on other accounting estimates.

A30. Determining which, and how many, of those matters that required significant auditor attention were of most significance in the audit of the financial statements of the current period is a matter of professional judgment. The number of key audit matters to be included in the auditor’s report may be affected by the size and complexity of the entity, the nature of its business and environment, and the facts and circumstances of the audit engagement. In general, the greater the number of matters initially determined to be key audit matters, the more the auditor may need to reconsider whether each of these matters meets the definition of a key audit matter. Lengthy lists of key audit matters may be contrary to the notion of such matters being those of most significance in the audit.

Communicating Key Audit Matters

Separate Key Audit Matters Section in the Auditor’s Report (Ref: Para. 11)

A31. Placing the separate Key Audit Matters section in close proximity to the auditor’s opinion may give prominence to such information and acknowledge the perceived value of engagement-specific information to intended users.

A32. The order of presentation of individual matters within the Key Audit Matters section is a matter of professional judgment. For example, such information may be organized in order of relative importance, based on the auditor’s judgment, or may correspond to the manner in which matters are disclosed in the financial statements. The requirement in paragraph 11 to include subheadings is intended to further differentiate the matters.

A33. When comparative financial information is presented, the introductory language of the Key Audit Matters section is tailored to draw attention to the fact that the key audit matters described relate to only the audit of the financial statements of the current period, and may include reference to the specific period covered by those financial statements (e.g., “for the year ended March 31, 20X1”).

Descriptions of Individual Key Audit Matters (Ref: Para. 13)

A34. The adequacy of the description of a key audit matter is a matter of professional judgment. The description of a key audit matter is intended to provide a succinct and balanced explanation to enable intended users to understand why the matter was of most significance in the audit and how the matter was addressed in the audit. Limiting the use of highly technical auditing terms also helps to enable intended users who do not have a reasonable knowledge of auditing to understand the basis for the auditor’s focus on particular matters during the audit. The nature and extent of information provided by the auditor is intended to be balanced in the context of the responsibilities of the respective parties (i.e., for the auditor to provide useful information in a concise and understandable form, while not inappropriately being the provider of original information about the entity).

A35. Original information is any information about the entity that has not otherwise been made publicly available by the entity (e.g., has not been included in the financial statements or other information available at the date of the auditor’s report, or addressed in other oral or written communications by management or those charged with governance, such as a preliminary announcement of financial information or investor briefings). Such information is the responsibility of the entity’s management and those charged with governance.

A36. It is appropriate for the auditor to seek to avoid the description of a key audit matter inappropriately providing original information about the entity. The description of a key audit matter is not usually of itself
original information about the entity, as it describes the matter in the context of the audit. However, the
auditor may consider it necessary to include additional information to explain why the matter was considered
to be one of most significance in the audit and therefore determined to be a key audit matter, and how the
matter was addressed in the audit, provided that disclosure of such information is not precluded by law or
regulation. When such information is determined to be necessary by the auditor, the auditor may encourage
management or those charged with governance to disclose additional information, rather than the auditor
providing original information in the auditor’s report.

A37. Management or those charged with governance may decide to include new or enhanced disclosures
in the financial statements or elsewhere in the annual report relating to a key audit matter in light of the fact
that the matter will be communicated in the auditor’s report. Such new or enhanced disclosures, for example,
may be included to provide more robust information about the sensitivity of key assumptions used in
accounting estimates or the entity’s rationale for a particular accounting practice or policy when acceptable
alternatives exist under the applicable financial reporting framework.

A38. Although the auditor’s opinion on the financial statements does not extend to the other information
addressed by SA 72030 the auditor may consider this information, as well as other publicly available
communications by the entity or other credible sources, in formulating the description of a key audit matter.

A39. Audit documentation prepared during the audit can also be useful to the auditor in formulating the
description of a key audit matter. For example, written communications, or the auditor’s documentation of
oral communications, with those charged with governance and other audit documentation provides a useful
basis for the auditor’s communication in the auditor’s report. This is because audit documentation in
accordance with SA 230 is intended to address the significant matters arising during the audit, the
conclusions reached thereon, and significant professional judgments made in reaching those conclusions,
and serves as a record of the nature, timing and extent of the audit procedures performed, the results of
those procedures, and the audit evidence obtained. Such documentation may assist the auditor in
developing a description of key audit matters that explains the significance of the matter and also in applying
the requirement in paragraph 18.

Reference to Where the Matter Is Disclosed in the Financial Statements (Ref: Para. 13)

A40. Paragraphs 13(a)-(b) requires the description of each key audit matter to address why the auditor
considered the matter to be one of most significance in the audit and how the matter was addressed in the
audit. Accordingly, the description of key audit matters is not a mere reiteration of what is disclosed in the
financial statements. However, a reference to any related disclosures enables intended users to further
understand how management has addressed the matter in preparing the financial statements.

A41. In addition to referring to related disclosure(s), the auditor may draw attention to key aspects of them.
The extent of disclosure by management about specific aspects or factors in relation to how a particular
matter is affecting the financial statements of the current period may help the auditor in pinpointing particular
aspects of how the matter was addressed in the audit such that intended users can understand why the
matter is a key audit matter. For example:

- When an entity includes robust disclosure about accounting estimates, the auditor may draw attention
to the disclosure of key assumptions, the disclosure of the range of possible outcomes, and other
qualitative and quantitative disclosures relating to key sources of estimation uncertainty or critical
accounting estimates, as part of addressing why the matter was one of most significance in the audit
and how the matter was addressed in the audit.

30 SA 720, The Auditor’s Responsibilities Relating to Other Information in Documents Containing Audited Financial
Statements.
When the auditor concludes in accordance with SA 570 (Revised) that no material uncertainty exists relating to events or conditions that may cast significant doubt on the entity’s ability to continue as a going concern, the auditor may nevertheless determine that one or more matters relating to this conclusion arising from the auditor’s work effort under SA 570 (Revised) are key audit matters. In such circumstances, the auditor’s description of such key audit matters in the auditor’s report could include aspects of the identified events or conditions disclosed in the financial statements, such as substantial operating losses, available borrowing facilities and possible debt refinancing, or non-compliance with loan agreements, and related mitigating factors.\(^3\)

**Why the Auditor Considered the Matter to Be One of Most Significance in the Audit (Ref: Para. 13(a))**

A42. The description of a key audit matter in the auditor’s report is intended to provide insight as to why the matter was determined to be a key audit matter. Accordingly, the requirements in paragraphs 9–10 and the application material in paragraphs A12–A29 related to determining key audit matters may also be helpful for the auditor in considering how such matters are to be communicated in the auditor’s report. For example, explaining the factors that led the auditor to conclude that a particular matter required significant auditor attention and was of most significance in the audit is likely to be of interest to intended users.

A43. The relevance of the information for intended users is a consideration for the auditor in determining what to include in the description of a key audit matter. This may include whether the description would enable a better understanding of the audit and the auditor’s judgments.

A44. Relating a matter directly to the specific circumstances of the entity may also help to minimize the potential that such descriptions become overly standardized and less useful over time. For example, certain matters may be determined as key audit matters in a particular industry across a number of entities due to the circumstances of the industry or the underlying complexity in financial reporting. In describing why the auditor considered the matter to be one of most significance, it may be useful for the auditor to highlight aspects specific to the entity (e.g., circumstances that affected the underlying judgments made in the financial statements of the current period) in order to make the description more relevant for intended users. This also may be important in describing a key audit matter that recurs over periods.

A45. The description may also make reference to the principal considerations that led the auditor, in the circumstances of the audit, to determine the matter to be one of most significance, for example:

- Economic conditions that affected the auditor’s ability to obtain audit evidence, for example illiquid markets for certain financial instruments.
- New or emerging accounting policies, for example entity-specific or industry-specific matters on which the engagement team consulted within the firm.
- Changes in the entity’s strategy or business model that had a material effect on the financial statements.

**How the Matter Was Addressed in the Audit (Ref: Para. 13(b))**

A46. The amount of detail to be provided in the auditor’s report to describe how a key audit matter was addressed in the audit is a matter of professional judgment. In accordance with paragraph 13(b), the auditor may describe:

- Aspects of the auditor’s response or approach that were most relevant to the matter or specific to the assessed risk of material misstatement;
- A brief overview of procedures performed;

\(^3\) See paragraph A3 of SA 570(Revised), Going Concern.
Part I: Engagement and Quality Control Standards

- An indication of the outcome of the auditor’s procedures; or
- Key observations with respect to the matter,

or some combination of these elements.

Law or regulation or national auditing standards may prescribe a specific form or content for the description of a key audit matter, or may specify the inclusion of one or more of these elements.

A47. In order for intended users to understand the significance of a key audit matter in the context of the audit of the financial statements as a whole, as well as the relationship between key audit matters and other elements of the auditor’s report, including the auditor’s opinion, care may be necessary so that language used in the description of a key audit matter:

- Does not imply that the matter has not been appropriately resolved by the auditor in forming the opinion on the financial statements.
- Relates the matter directly to the specific circumstances of the entity, while avoiding generic or standardized language.
- Takes into account how the matter is addressed in the related disclosure(s) in the financial statements, if any.
- Does not contain or imply discrete opinions on separate elements of the financial statements.

A48. Describing aspects of the auditor’s response or approach to a matter, in particular when the audit approach required significant tailoring to the facts and circumstances of the entity, may assist intended users in understanding unusual circumstances and significant auditor judgment required to address the risk of material misstatement. In addition, the audit approach in a particular period may have been influenced by entity-specific circumstances, economic conditions, or industry developments. It may also be useful for the auditor to make reference to the nature and extent of communications with those charged with governance about the matter.

A49. For example, in describing the auditor’s approach to an accounting estimate that has been identified as having high estimation uncertainty, such as the valuation of complex financial instruments, the auditor may wish to highlight that the auditor employed or engaged an auditor’s expert. Such a reference to the use of an auditor’s expert does not reduce the auditor’s responsibility for the opinion on the financial statements and is therefore not inconsistent with paragraphs 14–15 of SA 620.32

A50. There may be challenges in describing the auditor’s procedures, particularly in complex, judgmental areas of the audit. In particular, it may be difficult to summarize the procedures performed in a succinct way that adequately communicates the nature and extent of the auditor’s response to the assessed risk of material misstatement, and the significant auditor judgments involved. Nonetheless, the auditor may consider it necessary to describe certain procedures performed to communicate how the matter was addressed in the audit. Such description may typically be at a high level, rather than include a detailed description of procedures.

A51. As noted in paragraph A46, the auditor may also provide an indication of the outcome of the auditor’s response in the description of the key audit matter in the auditor’s report. However, if this is done, care is needed to avoid the auditor giving the impression that the description is conveying a separate opinion on an individual key audit matter or that in any way may call into question the auditor’s opinion on the financial statements as a whole.

*Circumstances in Which a Matter Determined to Be a Key Audit Matter is Not Communicated in the Auditor’s Report*
I.514 Auditing Pronouncements

Report (Ref: Para. 14)

A52. Law or regulation may preclude public disclosure by either management or the auditor about a specific matter determined to be a key audit matter. For example, law or regulation may specifically prohibit any public communication that might prejudice an investigation by an appropriate authority into an actual, or suspected, illegal act (e.g., matters that are or appear to be related to money laundering).

A53. As indicated by paragraph 14(b), it will be extremely rare for a matter determined to be a key audit matter not to be communicated in the auditor’s report. This is because there is presumed to be a public interest benefit in providing greater transparency about the audit for intended users. Accordingly, the judgment not to communicate a key audit matter is appropriate only in cases when the adverse consequences to the entity or the public as a result of such communication are viewed as so significant that they would reasonably be expected to outweigh the public interest benefits of communicating about the matter.

A54. The determination not to communicate a key audit matter takes into account the facts and circumstances related to the matter. Communication with management and those charged with governance helps the auditor understand management’s views about the significance of the adverse consequences that may arise as a result of communicating about a matter. In particular, communication with management and those charged with governance helps to inform the auditor’s judgment in determining whether to communicate the matter by:

- Assisting the auditor in understanding why the matter has not been publicly disclosed by the entity (e.g., if law, regulation or certain financial reporting frameworks permit delayed disclosure or non-disclosure of the matter) and management’s views as to the adverse consequences, if any, of disclosure. Management may draw attention to certain aspects in law or regulation or other authoritative sources that may be relevant to the consideration of adverse consequences (e.g., such aspects may include harm to the entity’s commercial negotiations or competitive position). However, management’s views about the adverse consequences alone do not alleviate the need for the auditor to determine whether the adverse consequences would reasonably be expected to outweigh the public interest benefits of communication in accordance with paragraph 14(b).

- Highlighting whether there have been any communications with applicable regulatory, enforcement or supervisory authorities in relation to the matter, in particular whether such discussions would appear to support management’s assertion as to why public disclosure about the matter is not appropriate.

- Enabling the auditor, where appropriate, to encourage management and those charged with governance to make public disclosure of relevant information about the matter. In particular, this may be possible if the concerns of management and those charged with governance about communicating are limited to specific aspects relating to the matter, such that certain information about the matter may be less sensitive and could be communicated.

The auditor also may consider it necessary to obtain a written representation from management as to why public disclosure about the matter is not appropriate, including management’s view about the significance of the adverse consequences that may arise as a result of such communication.

A55. It may also be necessary for the auditor to consider the implications of communicating about a matter determined to be a key audit matter in light of relevant ethical requirements. In addition, the auditor may be required by law or regulation to communicate with applicable regulatory, enforcement or supervisory authorities in relation to the matter, regardless of whether the matter is communicated in the auditor’s report. Such communication may also be useful to inform the auditor’s consideration of the adverse consequences that may arise from communicating about the matter.
A56. The issues considered by the auditor regarding a decision to not communicate a matter are complex and involve significant auditor judgment. Accordingly, the auditor may consider it appropriate to obtain legal advice.

Form and Content of the Key Audit Matters Section in Other Circumstances (Ref: Para. 16)

A57. The requirement in paragraph 16 applies in three circumstances:

(i) The auditor determines in accordance with paragraph 10 that there are no key audit matters (see paragraph A59).

(ii) The auditor determines in accordance with paragraph 14 that a key audit matter will not be communicated in the auditor’s report and no other matters have been determined to be key audit matters.

(iii) The only matters determined to be key audit matters are those communicated in accordance with paragraph 15.

A58. The following illustrates the presentation in the auditor’s report if the auditor has determined there are no key audit matters to communicate:

Key Audit Matters
[Except for the matter described in the Basis for Qualified (Adverse) Opinion section or Material Uncertainty Related to Going Concern section,] We have determined that there are no [other] key audit matters to communicate in our report.

A59. The determination of key audit matters involves making a judgment about the relative importance of matters that required significant auditor attention. Therefore, it may be rare that the auditor of a complete set of general purpose financial statements of a listed entity would not determine at least one key audit matter from the matters communicated with those charged with governance to be communicated in the auditor’s report. However, in certain limited circumstances (e.g., for a listed entity that has very limited operations), the auditor may determine that there are no key audit matters in accordance with paragraph 10 because there are no matters that required significant auditor attention.

Communication with Those Charged with Governance (Ref: Para. 17)

A60. SA 260 (Revised) requires the auditor to communicate with those charged with governance on a timely basis. The appropriate timing for communications about key audit matters will vary with the circumstances of the engagement. However, the auditor may communicate preliminary views about key audit matters when discussing the planned scope and timing of the audit, and may further discuss such matters when communicating about audit findings. Doing so may help to alleviate the practical challenges of attempting to have a robust two-way dialogue about key audit matters at the time the financial statements are being finalized for issuance.

A61. Communication with those charged with governance enables them to be made aware of the key audit matters that the auditor intends to communicate in the auditor’s report, and provides them with an opportunity to obtain further clarification where necessary. The auditor may consider it useful to provide those charged with governance with a draft of the auditor’s report to facilitate this discussion. Communication with those charged with governance recognizes their important role in overseeing the financial reporting process, and provides the opportunity for those charged with governance to understand the basis for the auditor’s decisions in relation to key audit matters and how these matters will be described in the auditor’s report. It also enables those charged with governance to consider whether new or enhanced disclosures may be

33 SA 260 (Revised), paragraph 21.
useful in light of the fact that these matters will be communicated in the auditor’s report.

A62. The communication with those charged with governance required by paragraph 17(a) also addresses
the extremely rare circumstances in which a matter determined to be a key audit matter is not communicated
in the auditor’s report (see paragraphs 14 and A54).

A63. The requirement in paragraph 17(b) to communicate with those charged with governance when the
auditor has determined there are no key audit matters to communicate in the auditor’s report may provide an
opportunity for the auditor to have further discussion with others who are familiar with the audit and the
significant matters that may have arisen (including the engagement quality control reviewer, where one has
been appointed). These discussions may cause the auditor to re-evaluate the auditor’s determination that
there are no key audit matters.

Documentation (Ref: Para. 18)

A64. Paragraph 8 of SA 230 requires the auditor to prepare audit documentation that is sufficient to enable
an experienced auditor, having no previous connection with the audit, to understand, among other things,
significant professional judgments. In the context of key audit matters, these professional judgments include
the determination, from the matters communicated with those charged with governance, of the matters that
required significant auditor attention, as well as whether or not each of those matters is a key audit matter.
The auditor’s judgments in this regard are likely to be supported by the documentation of the auditor’s
communications with those charged with governance and the audit documentation relating to each individual
matter (see paragraph A39), as well as certain other audit documentation of the significant matters arising
during the audit (e.g., a completion memorandum). However, this SA does not require the auditor to
document why other matters communicated with those charged with governance were not matters that
required significant auditor attention.
Introduction

Scope of this SA

1. This Standard on Auditing (SA) deals with the auditor's responsibility to issue an appropriate report in circumstances when, in forming an opinion in accordance with SA 700 (Revised), the auditor concludes that a modification to the auditor's opinion on the financial statements is necessary. This SA also deals with how the form and content of the auditor's report is affected when the auditor expresses a modified opinion. In all cases, the reporting requirements in SA 700 (Revised) apply, and are not repeated in this SA unless they are explicitly addressed or amended by the requirements of this SA.

Types of Modified Opinions

2. This SA establishes three types of modified opinions, namely, a qualified opinion, an adverse opinion, and a disclaimer of opinion. The decision regarding which type of modified opinion is appropriate depends upon:

   (a) The nature of the matter giving rise to the modification, that is, whether the financial statements are materially misstated or, in the case of an inability to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence, may be materially misstated; and

   (b) The auditor's judgment about the pervasiveness of the effects or possible effects of the matter on the financial statements. (Ref: Para. A1)

Effective Date

3. This SA is effective for audits of financial statements for periods beginning on or after April 1, 2017.

Objective

4. The objective of the auditor is to express clearly an appropriately modified opinion on the financial statements that is necessary when:

   (a) The auditor concludes, based on the audit evidence obtained, that the financial statements as a whole are not free from material misstatement; or

   (b) The auditor is unable to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence to conclude that the financial statements as a whole are free from material misstatement.

Definitions

5. For purposes of the SAs, the following terms have the meanings attributed below:

   (a) Pervasive -- A term used, in the context of misstatements, to describe the effects on the financial statements of misstatements or the possible effects on the financial statements of misstatements, if
any, that are undetected due to an inability to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence. Pervasive effects on the financial statements are those that, in the auditor’s judgment:

(i) Are not confined to specific elements, accounts or items of the financial statements;

(ii) If so confined, represent or could represent a substantial proportion of the financial statements; or

(iii) In relation to disclosures, are fundamental to users’ understanding of the financial statements.

(b) Modified opinion – A qualified opinion, an adverse opinion or a disclaimer of opinion on the financial statements.

Requirements

Circumstances When a Modification to the Auditor’s Opinion is Required

6. The auditor shall modify the opinion in the auditor’s report when:

(a) The auditor concludes that, based on the audit evidence obtained, the financial statements as a whole are not free from material misstatement; or (Ref: Para. A2–A7)

(b) The auditor is unable to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence to conclude that the financial statements as a whole are free from material misstatement. (Ref: Para. A8–A12)

Determining the Type of Modification to the Auditor’s Opinion

Qualified Opinion

7. The auditor shall express a qualified opinion when:

(a) The auditor, having obtained sufficient appropriate audit evidence, concludes that misstatements, individually or in the aggregate, are material, but not pervasive, to the financial statements; or

(b) The auditor is unable to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence on which to base the opinion, but the auditor concludes that the possible effects on the financial statements of undetected misstatements, if any, could be material but not pervasive.

Adverse Opinion

8. The auditor shall express an adverse opinion when the auditor, having obtained sufficient appropriate audit evidence, concludes that misstatements, individually or in the aggregate, are both material and pervasive to the financial statements.

Disclaimer of Opinion

9. The auditor shall disclaim an opinion when the auditor is unable to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence on which to base the opinion, and the auditor concludes that the possible effects on the financial statements of undetected misstatements, if any, could be both material and pervasive.

10. The auditor shall disclaim an opinion when, in extremely rare circumstances involving multiple uncertainties, the auditor concludes that, notwithstanding having obtained sufficient appropriate audit evidence regarding each of the individual uncertainties, it is not possible to form an opinion on the financial statements due to the potential interaction of the uncertainties and their possible cumulative effect on the financial statements.

Consequence of an Inability to Obtain Sufficient Appropriate Audit Evidence Due to a Management-Imposed Limitation after the Auditor Has Accepted the Engagement

11. If, after accepting the engagement, the auditor becomes aware that management has imposed a limitation on the scope of the audit that the auditor considers likely to result in the need to express a qualified opinion or to disclaim an opinion on the financial statements, the auditor shall request that management
remove the limitation.

12. If management refuses to remove the limitation referred to in paragraph 11 of this SA, the auditor shall communicate the matter to those charged with governance, unless all of those charged with governance are involved in managing the entity,2 and determine whether it is possible to perform alternative procedures to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence.

13. If the auditor is unable to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence, the auditor shall determine the implications as follows:

(a) If the auditor concludes that the possible effects on the financial statements of undetected misstatements, if any, could be material but not pervasive, the auditor shall qualify the opinion; or

(b) If the auditor concludes that the possible effects on the financial statements of undetected misstatements, if any, could be both material and pervasive so that a qualification of the opinion would be inadequate to communicate the gravity of the situation, the auditor shall:

(i) Withdraw from the audit, where practicable and possible under applicable law or regulation; or (Ref: Para. A13)

(ii) If withdrawal from the audit before issuing the auditor’s report is not practicable or possible, disclaim an opinion on the financial statements. (Ref: Para. A14)

14. If the auditor withdraws as contemplated by paragraph 13(b)(i), before withdrawing, the auditor shall communicate to those charged with governance any matters regarding misstatements identified during the audit that would have given rise to a modification of the opinion. (Ref: Para. A15)

Other Considerations Relating to an Adverse Opinion or Disclaimer of Opinion

15. When the auditor considers it necessary to express an adverse opinion or disclaim an opinion on the financial statements as a whole, the auditor’s report shall not also include an unmodified opinion with respect to the same financial reporting framework on a single financial statement or one or more specific elements, accounts or items of a financial statement. To include such an unmodified opinion in the same report3 in these circumstances would contradict the auditor’s adverse opinion or disclaimer of opinion on the financial statements as a whole. (Ref: Para. A16)

Form and Content of the Auditor’s Report When the Opinion is Modified

Auditor’s Opinion

16. When the auditor modifies the audit opinion, the auditor shall use the heading “Qualified Opinion,” “Adverse Opinion,” or “Disclaimer of Opinion,” as appropriate, for the Opinion section. (Ref: Para. A17–A19)

Qualified Opinion

17. When the auditor expresses a qualified opinion due to a material misstatement in the financial statements, the auditor shall state that, in the auditor’s opinion, except for the effects of the matter(s) described in the Basis for Qualified Opinion section:

(a) When reporting in accordance with a fair presentation framework, the accompanying financial statements present fairly, in all material respects (or give a true and fair view of) […] in accordance with [the applicable financial reporting framework]; or

2 SA 260 (Revised), Communication with Those Charged with Governance, paragraph 13

3 SA 805, Special Considerations—Audits of Single Financial Statements and Specific Elements, Accounts or Items of a Financial Statement, deals with circumstances where the auditor is engaged to express a separate opinion on one or more specific elements, accounts or items of a financial statement.
(b) When reporting in accordance with a compliance framework, the accompanying financial statements have been prepared, in all material respects, in accordance with [the applicable financial reporting framework].

When the modification arises from an inability to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence, the auditor shall use the corresponding phrase “except for the possible effects of the matter(s) ...” for the modified opinion. (Ref: Para. A20)

Adverse Opinion

18. When the auditor expresses an adverse opinion, the auditor shall state that, in the auditor’s opinion, because of the significance of the matter(s) described in the Basis for Adverse Opinion section:

(a) When reporting in accordance with a fair presentation framework, the accompanying financial statements do not present fairly (or give a true and fair view of) […] in accordance with [the applicable financial reporting framework]; or

(b) When reporting in accordance with a compliance framework, the accompanying financial statements have not been prepared, in all material respects, in accordance with [the applicable financial reporting framework].

Disclaimer of Opinion

19. When the auditor disclaims an opinion due to an inability to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence, the auditor shall:

(a) State that the auditor does not express an opinion on the accompanying financial statements;

(b) State that, because of the significance of the matter(s) described in the Basis for Disclaimer of Opinion section, the auditor has not been able to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence to provide a basis for an audit opinion on the financial statements; and

(c) Amend the statement required by paragraph 24(b) of SA 700 (Revised), which indicates that the financial statements have been audited, to state that the auditor was engaged to audit the financial statements.

Basis for Opinion

20. When the auditor modifies the opinion on the financial statements, the auditor shall, in addition to the specific elements required by SA 700 (Revised): (Ref: Para. A21)

(a) Amend the heading “Basis for Opinion” required by paragraph 28 of SA 700 (Revised) to “Basis for Qualified Opinion,” “Basis for Adverse Opinion,” or “Basis for Disclaimer of Opinion,” as appropriate; and

(b) Within this section, include a description of the matter giving rise to the modification.

21. If there is a material misstatement of the financial statements that relates to specific amounts in the financial statements (including quantitative disclosures in the notes to the financial statements), the auditor shall include in the Basis for Opinion section a description and quantification of the financial effects of the misstatement, unless impracticable. If it is not practicable to quantify the financial effects, the auditor shall so state in this section. (Ref: Para. A22)

22. If there is a material misstatement of the financial statements that relates to narrative disclosures, the auditor shall include in the Basis for Opinion section an explanation of how the disclosures are misstated.

23. If there is a material misstatement of the financial statements that relates to the non-disclosure of information required to be disclosed, the auditor shall:

(a) Discuss the non-disclosure with those charged with governance;
(b) Describe in the Basis for Opinion section the nature of the omitted information; and

(c) Unless prohibited by law or regulation, include the omitted disclosures, provided it is practicable to do so and the auditor has obtained sufficient appropriate audit evidence about the omitted information. (Ref: Para. A23)

24. If the modification results from an inability to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence, the auditor shall include in the Basis for Opinion section the reasons for that inability.

25. When the auditor expresses a qualified or adverse opinion, the auditor shall amend the statement about whether the audit evidence obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for the auditor’s opinion required by paragraph 28(d) of SA 700 (Revised) to include the word “qualified” or “adverse”, as appropriate.

26. When the auditor disclaims an opinion on the financial statements, the auditor's report shall not include the elements required by paragraphs 28(b) and 28(d) of SA 700 (Revised). Those elements are:

(a) A reference to the section of the auditor’s report where the auditor’s responsibilities are described; and

(b) A statement about whether the audit evidence obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for the auditor’s opinion.

27. Even if the auditor has expressed an adverse opinion or disclaimed an opinion on the financial statements, the auditor shall describe in the Basis for Opinion section the reasons for any other matters of which the auditor is aware that would have required a modification to the opinion, and the effects thereof. (Ref: Para. A24)

Description of Auditor’s Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Statements When the Auditor Disclaims an Opinion on the Financial Statements

28. When the auditor disclaims an opinion on the financial statements due to an inability to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence, the auditor shall amend the description of the auditor’s responsibilities required by paragraphs 38–40 of SA 700 (Revised) to include only the following: (Ref: Para. A25)

(a) A statement that the auditor’s responsibility is to conduct an audit of the entity’s financial statements in accordance with Standards on Auditing and to issue an auditor's report;

(b) A statement that, however, because of the matter(s) described in the Basis for Disclaimer of Opinion section, the auditor was not able to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence to provide a basis for an audit opinion on the financial statements; and

(c) The statement about auditor independence and other ethical responsibilities required by paragraph 28(c) of SA 700 (Revised).

Considerations When the Auditor Disclaims an Opinion on the Financial Statements

• Unless required by law or regulation, when the auditor disclaims an opinion on the financial statements, the auditor’s report shall not include a Key Audit Matters section in accordance with SA 701. (Ref: Para. A26)

Communication with Those Charged with Governance

• When the auditor expects to modify the opinion in the auditor’s report, the auditor shall communicate with those charged with governance the circumstances that led to the expected modification and the wording of the modification. (Ref: Para. A27)
Application and Other Explanatory Material

Types of Modified Opinions (Ref: Para. 2)

A1. The table below illustrates how the auditor’s judgment about the nature of the matter giving rise to the modification, and the pervasiveness of its effects or possible effects on the financial statements, affects the type of opinion to be expressed.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nature of Matter Giving Rise to the Modification</th>
<th>Auditor’s Judgment about the Pervasiveness of the Effects or Possible Effects on the Financial Statements</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Financial statements are materially misstated</td>
<td>Material but Not Pervasive: Qualified opinion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inability to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence</td>
<td>Material but Not Pervasive: Qualified opinion</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Circumstances When a Modification to the Auditor’s Opinion is Required

Nature of Material Misstatements (Ref: Para. 6(a))

A2. SA 700 (Revised) requires the auditor, in order to form an opinion on the financial statements, to conclude as to whether reasonable assurance has been obtained about whether the financial statements as a whole are free from material misstatement. This conclusion takes into account the auditor’s evaluation of uncorrected misstatements, if any, on the financial statements in accordance with SA 450.

A3. SA 450 defines a misstatement as a difference between the amount, classification, presentation, or disclosure of a reported financial statement item and the amount, classification, presentation, or disclosure that is required for the item to be in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework. Accordingly, a material misstatement of the financial statements may arise in relation to:

(a) The appropriateness of the selected accounting policies;
(b) The application of the selected accounting policies; or
(c) The appropriateness or adequacy of disclosures in the financial statements.

Appropriateness of the Selected Accounting Policies

A4. In relation to the appropriateness of the accounting policies management has selected, material misstatements of the financial statements may arise when:

(a) The selected accounting policies are not consistent with the applicable financial reporting framework; or
(b) The financial statements, including the related notes, do not represent the underlying transactions and

5 SA 700 (Revised), paragraph 11
6 SA 450, Evaluation of Misstatements Identified during the Audit, paragraph 11
events in a manner that achieves fair presentation.

A5. Financial reporting frameworks often contain requirements for the accounting for, and disclosure of, changes in accounting policies. Where the entity has changed its selection of significant accounting policies, a material misstatement of the financial statements may arise when the entity has not complied with these requirements.

Application of the Selected Accounting Policies

A6. In relation to the application of the selected accounting policies, material misstatements of the financial statements may arise:

(a) When management has not applied the selected accounting policies consistently with the financial reporting framework, including when management has not applied the selected accounting policies consistently between periods or to similar transactions and events (consistency in application); or

(b) Due to the method of application of the selected accounting policies (such as an unintentional error in application).

Appropriateness or Adequacy of Disclosures in the Financial Statements

A7. In relation to the appropriateness or adequacy of disclosures in the financial statements, material misstatements of the financial statements may arise when:

(a) The financial statements do not include all of the disclosures required by the applicable financial reporting framework;

(b) The disclosures in the financial statements are not presented in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework; or

(c) The financial statements do not provide the disclosures necessary to achieve fair presentation.

Nature of an Inability to Obtain Sufficient Appropriate Audit Evidence (Ref: Para. 6(b))

A8. The auditor’s inability to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence (also referred to as a limitation on the scope of the audit) may arise from:

(a) Circumstances beyond the control of the entity;

(b) Circumstances relating to the nature or timing of the auditor’s work; or

(c) Limitations imposed by management.

A9. An inability to perform a specific procedure does not constitute a limitation on the scope of the audit if the auditor is able to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence by performing alternative procedures. If this is not possible, the requirements of paragraphs 7(b) and 9–10 apply as appropriate. Limitations imposed by management may have other implications for the audit, such as for the auditor’s assessment of fraud risks and consideration of engagement continuance.

A10. Examples of circumstances beyond the control of the entity include when:

• The entity’s accounting records have been destroyed.

• The accounting records of a significant component have been seized indefinitely by governmental authorities.

A11. Examples of circumstances relating to the nature or timing of the auditor’s work include when:

• The entity is required to use the equity method of accounting for an associated entity, and the auditor is unable to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence about the latter’s financial information to evaluate whether the equity method has been appropriately applied.
• The timing of the auditor’s appointment is such that the auditor is unable to observe the counting of the physical inventories.
• The auditor determines that performing substantive procedures alone is not sufficient, but the entity’s controls are not effective.

A12. Examples of an inability to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence arising from a limitation on the scope of the audit imposed by management include when:
• Management prevents the auditor from observing the counting of the physical inventory.
• Management prevents the auditor from requesting external confirmation of specific account balances.

Determining the Type of Modification to the Auditor’s Opinion

Consequence of an Inability to Obtain Sufficient Appropriate Audit Evidence Due to a Management-Imposed Limitation after the Auditor Has Accepted the Engagement (Ref: Para. 13(b)(i)–14)

A13. The practicality of withdrawing from the audit may depend on the stage of completion of the engagement at the time that management imposes the scope limitation. If the auditor has substantially completed the audit, the auditor may decide to complete the audit to the extent possible, disclaim an opinion and explain the scope limitation within the Basis for Disclaimer of Opinion section prior to withdrawing.

A14. In certain circumstances, withdrawal from the audit may not be possible if the auditor is required by law or regulation to continue the audit engagement. This may be the case for an auditor that is appointed to audit the financial statements of public sector entities. It may also be the case in entities where the auditor is appointed to audit the financial statements covering a specific period, or appointed for a specific period and is prohibited from withdrawing before the completion of the audit of those financial statements or before the end of that period, respectively. The auditor may also consider it necessary to include an Other Matter paragraph in the auditor's report.7

A15. When the auditor concludes that withdrawal from the audit is necessary because of a scope limitation, there may be a professional, legal or regulatory requirement for the auditor to communicate matters relating to the withdrawal to the engagement regulators or the entity’s owners.

Other Considerations Relating to an Adverse Opinion or Disclaimer of Opinion (Ref: Para. 15)

A16. The following are examples of reporting circumstances that would not contradict the auditor’s adverse opinion or disclaimer of opinion:
• The expression of an unmodified opinion on financial statements prepared under a given financial reporting framework and, within the same report, the expression of an adverse opinion on the same financial statements under a different financial reporting framework.8
• The expression of a disclaimer of opinion regarding the results of operations, and cash flows, where relevant, and an unmodified opinion regarding the financial position (see SA 5109). In this case, the auditor has not expressed a disclaimer of opinion on the financial statements as a whole.

Form and Content of the Auditor’s Report When the Opinion Is Modified

Illustrative Auditor’s Reports (Ref: Para. 16)

A17. Illustrations 1 and 2 in the Appendix contain auditor’s reports with qualified and adverse opinions, respectively, as the financial statements are materially misstated.

7 SA 706 (Revised), Emphasis of Matter Paragraphs and Other Matter Paragraphs in the Independent Auditor’s Report, paragraph A10
8 See paragraph A25 of SA 700 (Revised) for a description of this circumstance.
9 SA 510, Initial Audit Engagements — Opening Balances, paragraph 10 and A5

© The Institute of Chartered Accountants of India
A18. Illustration 3 in the Appendix contains an auditor's report with a qualified opinion as the auditor is unable to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence. Illustration 4 contains a disclaimer of opinion due to an inability to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence about a single element of the financial statements. Illustration 5 contains a disclaimer of opinion due to an inability to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence about multiple elements of the financial statements. In each of the latter two cases, the possible effects on the financial statements of the inability are both material and pervasive. The Appendices to other SAs that include reporting requirements, including SA 570 (Revised), also include illustrations of auditor's reports with modified opinions.

Auditor's Opinion (Ref: Para. 16)

A19. Amending this heading makes it clear to the user that the auditor's opinion is modified and indicates the type of modification.

Qualified Opinion (Ref: Para. 17)

A20. When the auditor expresses a qualified opinion, it would not be appropriate to use phrases such as "with the foregoing explanation" or "subject to" in the Opinion section as these are not sufficiently clear or forceful.

Basis for Opinion (Ref: Para. 20, 21, 23, 27)

A21. Consistency in the auditor's report helps to promote users' understanding and to identify unusual circumstances when they occur. Accordingly, although uniformity in the wording of a modified opinion and in the description of the reasons for the modification may not be possible, consistency in both the form and content of the auditor’s report is desirable.

A22. An example of the financial effects of material misstatements that the auditor may describe within the Basis for Opinion section in the auditor’s report is the quantification of the effects on income tax, income before taxes, net income and equity if inventory is overstated.

A23. Disclosing the omitted information within the Basis for Opinion section would not be practicable if:

(a) The disclosures have not been prepared by management or the disclosures are otherwise not readily available to the auditor; or

(b) In the auditor’s judgment, the disclosures would be unduly voluminous in relation to the auditor’s report.

A24. An adverse opinion or a disclaimer of opinion relating to a specific matter described within the Basis for Opinion section does not justify the omission of a description of other identified matters that would have otherwise required a modification of the auditor’s opinion. In such cases, the disclosure of such other matters of which the auditor is aware may be relevant to users of the financial statements.

Description of Auditor's Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Statements When the Auditor Disclaims an Opinion on the Financial Statements (Ref: Para. 28)

A25. When the auditor disclaims an opinion on the financial statements, the following statements are better positioned within the Auditor’s Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Statements section of the auditor’s report, as illustrated in Illustrations 4–5 of the Appendix to this SA:

- The statement required by paragraph 28(a) of SA 700 (Revised), amended to state that the auditor’s responsibility is to conduct an audit of the entity’s financial statements in accordance with SAs; and

- The statement required by paragraph 28(c) of SA 700 (Revised) about independence and other ethical responsibilities.

10 SA 570 (Revised), Going Concern
Considerations When the Auditor Disclaims an Opinion on the Financial Statements (Ref: Para. 29)

A26. Providing the reasons for the auditor’s inability to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence within the Basis for Disclaimer of Opinion section of the auditor’s report provides useful information to users in understanding why the auditor has disclaimed an opinion on the financial statements and may further guard against inappropriate reliance on them. However, communication of any key audit matters other than the matter(s) giving rise to the disclaimer of opinion may suggest that the financial statements as a whole are more credible in relation to those matters than would be appropriate in the circumstances, and would be inconsistent with the disclaimer of opinion on the financial statements as a whole. Accordingly, paragraph 29 of this SA prohibits a Key Audit Matters section from being included in the auditor’s report when the auditor disclaims an opinion on the financial statements, unless the auditor is otherwise required by law or regulation to communicate key audit matters.

Communication with Those Charged with Governance (Ref: Para. 30)

A27. Communicating with those charged with governance the circumstances that lead to an expected modification to the auditor’s opinion and the wording of the modification enables:

• The auditor to give notice to those charged with governance of the intended modification(s) and the reasons (or circumstances) for the modification(s);
• The auditor to seek the concurrence of those charged with governance regarding the facts of the matter(s) giving rise to the expected modification(s), or to confirm matters of disagreement with management as such; and
• Those charged with governance to have an opportunity, where appropriate, to provide the auditor with further information and explanations in respect of the matter(s) giving rise to the expected modification(s).

Appendix (Ref: Para. A17–A18, A25)

Illustrations of Auditor’s Reports with Modifications to the Opinion

• Illustration 1: An auditor’s report containing a qualified opinion due to a material misstatement of the financial statements.
• Illustration 2: An auditor’s report containing an adverse opinion due to a material misstatement of the consolidated financial statements.
• Illustration 3: An auditor’s report containing a qualified opinion due to the auditor’s inability to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence regarding a foreign associate.
• Illustration 4: An auditor’s report containing a disclaimer of opinion due to the auditor’s inability to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence about a single element of the consolidated financial statements.
• Illustration 5: An auditor’s report containing a disclaimer of opinion due to the auditor’s inability to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence about multiple elements of the financial statements.

Illustration 1 – Qualified Opinion due to a Material Misstatement of the Financial Statements

For purposes of this illustrative auditor’s report, the following circumstances are assumed:

• Audit of a complete set of financial statements of a listed company (registered under the Companies Act, 2013) using a fair presentation framework.
• The financial statements are prepared by management of the entity in accordance with the Accounting...
Standards prescribed under section 133 of the Companies Act, 2013 (a general purpose framework).

- The terms of the audit engagement reflect the description of management’s responsibility for the financial statements in SA 210.\(^{11}\)
- Inventories are misstated. The misstatement is deemed to be material but not pervasive to the financial statements (i.e., a qualified opinion is appropriate).
- The relevant ethical requirements that apply to the audit are the ICAI’s Code of Ethics and the provisions of the Companies Act, 2013.
- Based on the audit evidence obtained, the auditor has concluded that a material uncertainty does not exist related to events or conditions that may cast significant doubt on the entity’s ability to continue as a going concern in accordance with SA 570 (Revised).
- Key audit matters have been communicated in accordance with SA 701.
- Those responsible for oversight of the financial statements differ from those responsible for the preparation of the financial statements.
- In addition to the audit of the financial statements, the auditor has other reporting responsibilities required under the Companies Act, 2013.

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR’S REPORT
To the Members of ABC Company Limited

Report on the Audit of the Standalone Financial Statements\(^{12}\)

Qualified Opinion
We have audited the standalone financial statements of ABC Company Limited (“the Company”), which comprise the balance sheet as at March 31, 20XX, and the statement of Profit and Loss, (statement of changes in equity)\(^{13}\) and the statement of cash flows for the year then ended, and notes to the financial statements, including a summary of significant accounting policies and other explanatory information (in which are included the Returns for the year ended on that date audited by the branch auditors of the Company’s branches located at (location of branches))\(^{14}\).

In our opinion and to the best of our information and according to the explanations given to us, except for the effects of the matter described in the Basis for Qualified Opinion section of our report, the aforesaid financial statements give a true and fair view in conformity with the accounting principles generally accepted in India, of the state of affairs of the Company as at March 31st, 20XX and profit/loss, (changes in equity) and its cash flows for the year ended on that date.

Basis for Qualified Opinion
The Company’s inventories are carried in the Balance Sheet at Rs. XXX. Management has not stated the inventories at the lower of cost and net realizable value but has stated them solely at cost, which constitutes a departure from the Accounting Standards prescribed under section 133 of the Companies Act, 2013. The Company’s records indicate that, had management stated the inventories at the lower of cost and net realizable value, an amount of Rs. xxx would have been required to write the inventories down to their net realizable value. Accordingly, cost of sales would have been increased by Rs. xxx, and income tax, net income and shareholders’ funds would have been reduced by Rs. xxx, Rs. xxx and Rs. xxx, respectively.

\(^{11}\) SA 210, Agreeing the Terms of Audit Engagements

\(^{12}\) The sub-title “Report on the Audit of the Standalone Financial Statements” is unnecessary in circumstances when the second sub-title “Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements” is not applicable.

\(^{13}\) As may be applicable.

\(^{14}\) As may be applicable.
We conducted our audit in accordance with Standards on Auditing (SAs) specified under section 143(10) of the Companies Act, 2013. Our responsibilities under those Standards are further described in the Auditor’s Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Statements section of our report. We are independent of the Company in accordance with the Code of Ethics issued by the Institute of Chartered Accountants of India together with the ethical requirements that are relevant to our audit of the financial statements under the provisions of the Companies Act, 2013 and we have fulfilled our other ethical responsibilities in accordance with these requirements and the ICAI’s Code of Ethics. We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our qualified opinion.

Key Audit Matters
Key audit matters are those matters that, in our professional judgment, were of most significance in our audit of the financial statements of the current period. These matters were addressed in the context of our audit of the financial statements as a whole, and in forming our opinion thereon, and we do not provide a separate opinion on these matters. In addition to the matter described in the Basis for Qualified Opinion section we have determined the matters described below to be the key audit matters to be communicated in our report.

[Description of each key audit matter in accordance with SA 701.]

Responsibilities of Management and Those Charged with Governance for the Financial Statements
[Reporting in accordance with SA 700 (Revised) – see Illustration 1 in SA 700 (Revised).]

Auditor’s Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Statements
[Reporting in accordance with SA 700 (Revised) – see Illustration 1 in SA 700 (Revised).]

Other Matter15
We did not audit the financial statements/information of ________(number) branches included in the standalone financial statements of the Company whose financial statements / financial information reflect total assets of Rs.______ as at 31st March, 20XX and total revenues of Rs._______ for the year ended on that date, as considered in the standalone financial statements. The financial statements/information of these branches have been audited by the branch auditors whose reports have been furnished to us, and our opinion in so far as it relates to the amounts and disclosures included in respect of these branches, is based solely on the report of such branch auditors.

Our opinion is not modified in respect of this matter.

Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements
[Reporting in accordance with SA 700 (Revised) – see Illustration 1 in SA 700 (Revised).]
Illustration 2 – Adverse Opinion due to a Material Misstatement of the Consolidated Financial Statements

For purposes of this illustrative auditor’s report, the following circumstances are assumed:

- Audit of a complete set of consolidated financial statements of a listed company (incorporated under the Companies Act, 2013) using a fair presentation framework. The audit is a group audit of an entity with subsidiaries (i.e., SA 600 applies).
- The consolidated financial statements are prepared by management of the entity in accordance with the Accounting Standards prescribed under section 133 of the Companies Act, 2013 (a general purpose framework).
- The terms of the audit engagement reflect the description of management’s responsibility for the consolidated financial statements in SA 210.
- The consolidated financial statements are materially misstated due to the non-consolidation of a subsidiary. The material misstatement is deemed to be pervasive to the consolidated financial statements. The effects of the misstatement on the consolidated financial statements have not been determined because it was not practicable to do so (i.e., an adverse opinion is appropriate).
- The relevant ethical requirements that apply to the audit are the ICAI’s Code of Ethics and the provisions of the Companies Act, 2013.
- Based on the audit evidence obtained, the auditor has concluded that a material uncertainty does not exist related to events or conditions that may cast significant doubt on the entity’s ability to continue as a going concern in accordance with SA 570 (Revised).
- SA 701 applies; however, the auditor has determined that there are no key audit matters other than the matter described in the Basis for Adverse Opinion section.
- Those responsible for oversight of the consolidated financial statements differ from those responsible for the preparation of the consolidated financial statements.
- In addition to the audit of the consolidated financial statements, the auditor has other reporting responsibilities required under the Companies Act, 2013.

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR’S REPORT

To the Members of ABC Company Limited

Report on the Audit of the Consolidated Financial Statements

Adverse Opinion

We have audited the accompanying consolidated financial statements of ABC Company Limited (hereinafter referred to as the “Holding Company”) and its subsidiaries (the Holding Company and its subsidiaries together referred to as “the Group”), its associates and jointly controlled entities, which comprise the consolidated balance sheet as at March 31, 2XXX, the consolidated statement of profit and Loss, (consolidated statement of changes in equity) and the consolidated statement of cash flows for the year then ended, and notes to the consolidated financial statements, including a summary of significant accounting policies (hereinafter referred to as the “consolidated financial statements”).

In our opinion and to the best of our information and according to the explanations given to us, because

---

17 The sub-title “Report on the Audit of the Consolidated Financial Statements” is unnecessary in circumstances when the second sub-title “Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements” is not applicable.

18 Where applicable.
of the significance of the matter discussed in the Basis for Adverse Opinion section of our report, the accompanying consolidated financial statements do not give a true and fair view in conformity with the accounting principles generally accepted in India, of their consolidated state of affairs of the Group, its associates and jointly controlled entities, as at March 31, 20XX, of its consolidated profit/loss, (consolidated position of changes in equity)\(^{19}\) and the consolidated cash flows for the year then ended.

**Basis for Adverse Opinion**

As explained in Note X, the Group has not consolidated subsidiary XYZ Company that the Group acquired during 20XX because it has not yet been able to determine the fair values of certain of the subsidiary’s material assets and liabilities at the acquisition date. This investment is therefore accounted for on a cost basis. Under the accounting principles generally accepted in India, the Group should have consolidated this subsidiary and accounted for the acquisition based on provisional amounts. Had XYZ Company been consolidated, many elements in the accompanying consolidated financial statements would have been materially affected. The effects on the consolidated financial statements of the failure to consolidate have not been determined.

We conducted our audit in accordance with Standards on Auditing (SAs) specified under section 143(10) of the Companies Act, 2013. Our responsibilities under those Standards are further described in the Auditor’s Responsibilities for the Audit of the Consolidated Financial Statements section of our report. We are independent of the Group, its associates and jointly controlled entities, in accordance with the Code of Ethics and provisions of the Companies Act, 2013 that are relevant to our audit of the consolidated financial statements in India under the Companies Act, 2013, and we have fulfilled our other ethical responsibilities in accordance with the Code of Ethics and the requirements under the Companies act, 2013. We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our adverse opinion.

**Key Audit Matters**

Except for the matter described in the Basis for Adverse Opinion section, we have determined that there are no other key audit matters to communicate in our report.

**Responsibilities of Management and Those Charged with Governance for the Consolidated Financial Statements\(^{20}\)**

[Reporting in accordance with SA 700 (Revised) – see Illustration 2 in SA 700 (Revised).]

**Auditor’s Responsibilities for the Audit of the Consolidated Financial Statements**

[Reporting in accordance with SA 700 (Revised) – see Illustration 2 in SA 700 (Revised).]

**Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements**

[Reporting in accordance with SA 700 (Revised) – see Illustration 2 in SA 700 (Revised).]

For XYZ & Co
Chartered Accountants
(Firm’s Registration No.)

Signature
(Name of the Member Signing the Audit Report)
(Designation\(^{21}\))
(Membership No. XXXXX)

Place of Signature:
Date:

\(^{19}\) Where applicable.

\(^{20}\) Or other terms that are appropriate in the context of the legal framework in the particular jurisdiction.

\(^{21}\) Partner or Proprietor, as the case may be
### Illustration 3 – Qualified Opinion due to the Auditor’s Inability to Obtain Sufficient Audit Evidence Regarding a Foreign Associate

For purposes of this illustrative auditor’s report, the following circumstances are assumed:

- **Audit of a complete set of consolidated financial statements of a listed Company (incorporated under the Companies Act, 2013) using a fair presentation framework. The audit is a group audit of an entity with subsidiaries, associates and jointly controlled entities (i.e., SA 600 applies).**
- The consolidated financial statements are prepared by management of the entity in accordance with the Accounting Standards prescribed under section 133 of the Companies Act, 2013.
- The terms of the audit engagement reflect the description of management’s responsibility for the consolidated financial statements in SA 210.
- The auditor was unable to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence regarding an investment in a foreign associate. The possible effects of the inability to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence are deemed to be material but not pervasive to the consolidated financial statements (i.e., a qualified opinion is appropriate).
- The relevant ethical requirements that apply to the audit are the ICAI’s Code of Ethics and the relevant provisions of the Companies Act, 2013.
- Based on the audit evidence obtained, the auditor has concluded that a material uncertainty does not exist related to events or conditions that may cast significant doubt on the entity’s ability to continue as a going concern in accordance with SA 570 (Revised).
- Key audit matters have been communicated in accordance with SA 701.
- Those responsible for oversight of the consolidated financial statements differ from those responsible for the preparation of the consolidated financial statements.
- In addition to the audit of the consolidated financial statements, the auditor has other reporting responsibilities required under the Companies Act, 2013.

### INDEPENDENT AUDITOR’S REPORT

To the Members of ABC Company Limited

**Report on the Audit of the Consolidated Financial Statements**

**Qualified Opinion**

We have audited the accompanying consolidated financial statements of ABC Company Limited (hereinafter referred to as the “Holding Company”) and its subsidiaries (the Holding Company and its subsidiaries together referred to as “the Group”), its associates and jointly controlled entities, which comprise the consolidated balance sheet as at March 31, 20XX, and the consolidated statement of Profit and Loss, (consolidated statement of changes in equity)\(^{23}\) and consolidated statement of cash flows for the year then ended, and notes to the consolidated financial statements, including a summary of significant accounting policies (hereinafter referred to as “the consolidated financial statements”).

In our opinion and to the best of our information and according to the explanations given to us, except for the possible effects of the matter described in the **Basis for Qualified Opinion** section of our report, the aforesaid consolidated financial statements give a true and fair view in conformity with the accounting standards.

---

\(^{22}\) The sub-title “Report on the Audit of the Consolidated Financial Statements” is unnecessary in circumstances when the second sub-title “Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements” is not applicable.

\(^{23}\) Where applicable.
principles generally accepted in India, of their consolidated state of affairs as at March 31, 2XXX, consolidated profit/loss, (consolidated changes in equity)\textsuperscript{24}, consolidated cash flows for the year then ended.

**Basis for Qualified Opinion**

The Group’s investment in XYZ Company, a foreign associate acquired during the year and accounted for by the equity method, is carried at Rs. xxx on the consolidated balance sheet as at March 31, 20XX, and ABC’s share of XYZ’s net income of xxx is included in ABC’s income for the year then ended. We were unable to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence about the carrying amount of ABC’s investment in XYZ as at March 31, 2XXX and ABC’s share of XYZ’s net income for the year because we were denied access to the financial information, management, and the auditors of XYZ. Consequently, we were unable to determine whether any adjustments to these amounts were necessary.

We conducted our audit in accordance with Standards on Auditing (SAs) prescribed under section 143(10) of the Companies Act, 2013. Our responsibilities under those Standards are further described in the Auditor’s Responsibilities for the Audit of the Consolidated Financial Statements section of our report. We are independent of the Group and its associates and joint ventures in accordance with the ethical requirements that are relevant to our audit of the consolidated financial statements in India in terms of the Code of Ethics issued by the Institute of Chartered Accountants of India and the relevant provisions of the Companies Act, 2013, and we have fulfilled our other ethical responsibilities in accordance with these requirements. We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our qualified opinion.

**Key Audit Matters**

Key audit matters are those matters that, in our professional judgment, were of most significance in our audit of the consolidated financial statements of the current period. These matters were addressed in the context of our audit of the consolidated financial statements as a whole, and in forming our opinion thereon, and we do not provide a separate opinion on these matters. In addition to the matter described in the Basis for Qualified Opinion section, we have determined the matters described below to be the key audit matters to be communicated in our report.

[Description of each key audit matter in accordance with SA 701.]

**Responsibilities of Management and Those Charged with Governance for the Consolidated Financial Statements**\textsuperscript{25}

[Reporting in accordance with SA 700 (Revised) – see Illustration 2 in SA 700 (Revised).]

**Auditor’s Responsibilities for the Audit of the Consolidated Financial Statements**

[Reporting in accordance with SA 700 (Revised) – see Illustration 2 in SA 700 (Revised).]

\textsuperscript{24} Where applicable.

\textsuperscript{25} Or other terms that are appropriate in the context of the legal framework in the particular jurisdiction.
Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements

[Reporting in accordance with SA 700 (Revised) – see Illustration 2 in SA 700 (Revised).]

For XYZ & Co
Chartered Accountants
(Firm’s Registration No.)

Signature
(Name of the Member signing the Audit Report)
(Designation\(^{26}\))
(Membership No. XXXXX)

Place of Signature:
Date:

**Illustration 4 – Disclaimer of Opinion due to the Auditor’s Inability to Obtain Sufficient Appropriate Audit Evidence about a Single Element of the Consolidated Financial Statements**

For purposes of this illustrative auditor’s report, the following circumstances are assumed:

- Audit of a complete set of consolidated financial statements of an unlisted Company incorporated under the Companies Act, 2013 using a fair presentation framework. The audit is a group audit of an entity with subsidiaries (i.e., SA 600 applies).
- The consolidated financial statements are prepared by management of the entity in accordance with the Accounting Standards prescribed under section 133 of the Companies Act, 2013 (a general purpose framework).
- The terms of the audit engagement reflect the description of management’s responsibility for the consolidated financial statements in SA 210.
- The auditor was unable to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence about a single element of the consolidated financial statements. That is, the auditor was also unable to obtain audit evidence about the financial information of a joint venture investment that represents over 90% of the entity’s net assets. The possible effects of this inability to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence are deemed to be both material and pervasive to the consolidated financial statements (i.e., a disclaimer of opinion is appropriate).
- The relevant ethical requirements that apply to the audit are the ICAI’s Code of Ethics and provisions of the Companies Act, 2013.
- Those responsible for oversight of the consolidated financial statements differ from those responsible for the preparation of the consolidated financial statements.
- A more limited description of the auditor’s responsibilities section is required.
- In addition to the audit of the consolidated financial statements, the auditor has other reporting responsibilities required under the Companies Act, 2013

\(^{26}\) Partner or Proprietor, as the case may be
INDEPENDENT AUDITOR’S REPORT

To the Members of ABC Company Limited

Report on the Audit of the Consolidated Financial Statements

Disclaimer of Opinion

We were engaged to audit the accompanying consolidated financial statements of ABC Company Limited (hereinafter referred to as the “Holding Company”) and its subsidiaries (the Holding Company and its subsidiaries together referred to as “the Group”), which comprise the consolidated balance sheet as at March 31, 20XX, the consolidated statement of Profit and Loss, (consolidated statement of changes in equity) and consolidated statement of cash flows for the year then ended, and notes to the consolidated financial statements, including a summary of significant accounting policies (hereinafter referred to as the “Consolidated Financial Statements”).

We do not express an opinion on the accompanying consolidated financial statements of the Group. Because of the significance of the matter described in the Basis for Disclaimer of Opinion section of our report, we have not been able to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence to provide a basis for an audit opinion on these consolidated financial statements.

Basis for Disclaimer of Opinion

The Group’s investment in its joint venture XYZ Company is carried at Rs. xxx on the Group’s consolidated balance sheet, which represents over 90% of the Group’s net assets as at March 31, 20XX. We were not allowed access to the management and the auditors of XYZ Company, including XYZ Company’s auditors’ audit documentation. As a result, we were unable to determine whether any adjustments were necessary in respect of the Group’s proportional share of XYZ Company’s assets that it controls jointly, its proportional share of XYZ Company’s liabilities for which it is jointly responsible, its proportional share of XYZ’s income and expenses for the year, (and the elements making up the consolidated statement of changes in equity) and the consolidated cash flow statement.

Responsibilities of Management and Those Charged with Governance for the Consolidated Financial Statements

[Reporting in accordance with SA 700 (Revised) – see Illustration 2 in SA 700 (Revised).]

Auditor’s Responsibilities for the Audit of the Consolidated Financial Statements

Our responsibility is to conduct an audit of the Group’s consolidated financial statements in accordance with Standards on Auditing and to issue an auditor’s report. However, because of the matter described in the Basis for Disclaimer of Opinion section of our report, we were not able to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence to provide a basis for an audit opinion on these consolidated financial statements.

We are independent of the Group in accordance with the ethical requirements that are relevant to our audit of the financial statements and we have fulfilled our other ethical responsibilities in accordance with these requirements.

27 The sub-title “Report on the Audit of the Consolidated Financial Statements” is unnecessary in circumstances when the second sub-title “Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements” is not applicable.

28 Where applicable.

29 Where applicable.

30 Or other terms that are appropriate in the context of the legal framework of the particular jurisdiction
Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements

[Reporting in accordance with SA 700 (Revised) – see Illustration 2 in SA 700 (Revised).]

For XYZ & Co
Chartered Accountants
(Firm’s Registration No.)

Signature
(Name of the Member signing the Audit Report)
(Designation\(^{31}\))
(Membership No. XXXXX)

Place of Signature:
Date:

Illustration 5 – Disclaimer of Opinion due to the Auditor’s Inability to Obtain Sufficient Appropriate Audit Evidence about Multiple Elements of the Financial Statements

For purposes of this illustrative auditor’s report, the following circumstances are assumed:

- Audit of a complete set of financial statements of an entity other than a company incorporated under the Companies Act, 2013, using a fair presentation framework. The audit is not a group audit (i.e., SA 600, does not apply).
- The financial statements are prepared by management of the entity in accordance with the Accounting Standards issued by the Institute of Chartered Accountants of India (a general purpose framework).
- The terms of the audit engagement reflect the description of management’s responsibility for the financial statements in SA 210.
- The auditor was unable to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence about multiple elements of the financial statements, that is, the auditor was also unable to obtain audit evidence about the entity’s inventories and accounts receivable. The possible effects of this inability to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence are deemed to be both material and pervasive to the financial statements.
- The relevant ethical requirements that apply to the audit are ICAI’s Code of Ethics and applicable law/regulation.
- Those responsible for oversight of the financial statements differ from those responsible for the preparation of the financial statements.
- A more limited description of the auditor’s responsibilities section is required.
- In addition to the audit of the financial statements, the auditor has other reporting responsibilities required under relevant law/regulation.

---

\(^{31}\) Partner or Proprietor, as the case may be
INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT
To the Partners of ABC & Associates

Report on the Audit of the Financial Statements

Disclaimer of Opinion
We were engaged to audit the financial statements of ABC & Associates (“the entity”), which comprise the balance sheet as at March 31, 20XX, the statement of Profit and Loss, (the statement of changes in equity) and statement of cash flows for the year then ended, and notes to the financial statements, including a summary of significant accounting policies.

We do not express an opinion on the accompanying financial statements of the entity. Because of the significance of the matters described in the Basis for Disclaimer of Opinion section of our report, we have not been able to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence to provide a basis for an audit opinion on these financial statements.

Basis for Disclaimer of Opinion
We were not appointed as auditors of the Company until after March 31, 20X1 and thus did not observe the counting of physical inventories at the beginning and end of the year. We were unable to satisfy ourselves by alternative means concerning the inventory quantities held at March 31, 20X0 and 20X1, which are stated in the Balance Sheets at Rs xxx and Rs xxx, respectively. In addition, the introduction of a new computerized accounts receivable system in September 20X1 resulted in numerous errors in accounts receivable. As of the date of our report, management was still in the process of rectifying the system deficiencies and correcting the errors. We were unable to confirm or verify by alternative means accounts receivable included in the Balance Sheet at a total amount of Rs xxx as at March 31, 20X1. As a result of these matters, we were unable to determine whether any adjustments might have been found necessary in respect of recorded or unrecorded inventories and accounts receivable, and the elements making up the statement of Profit and Loss (and statement of cash flows).

Responsibilities of Management and Those Charged with Governance for the Financial Statements
[Reporting in accordance with SA 700 (Revised) – see Illustration 1 in SA 700 (Revised).]

Auditor’s Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Statements
Our responsibility is to conduct an audit of the entity’s financial statements in accordance with Standards on Auditing and to issue an auditor’s report. However, because of the matters described in the Basis for Disclaimer of Opinion section of our report, we were not able to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence to provide a basis for an audit opinion on these financial statements.

We are independent of the entity in accordance with the ethical requirements in accordance with the requirements of the Code of Ethics issued by ICAI and the ethical requirements as prescribed under the laws and regulations applicable to the entity.

32 The sub-title “Report on the Audit of the Financial Statements” is unnecessary in circumstances when the second sub-title “Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements” is not applicable.
33 Where applicable.
34 Where applicable.
35 Or other terms that are appropriate in the context of the legal framework of the particular jurisdiction.
Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements

[Reporting in accordance with SA 700 (Revised) – see Illustration 1 in SA 700 (Revised).]

For XYZ & Co
Chartered Accountants
(Firm’s Registration No.)

Signature
(Name of the Member signing the Audit Report)
(Designation36)
(Membership No. XXXXX)

Place of Signature:
Date:

36 Partner or Proprietor, as the case may be
SA 706
Emphasis of Matter Paragraphs and Other Matter Paragraphs in the Independent Auditor’s Report
(Effective for all audits relating to accounting periods beginning on or after April 1, 2017)

Introduction
Scope of this SA
1. This Standard on Auditing (SA) deals with additional communication in the auditor’s report when the auditor considers it necessary to:
   (a) Draw users’ attention to a matter or matters presented or disclosed in the financial statements that are of such importance that they are fundamental to users’ understanding of the financial statements; or
   (b) Draw users’ attention to any matter or matters other than those presented or disclosed in the financial statements that are relevant to users’ understanding of the audit, the auditor’s responsibilities or the auditor’s report.
2. SA 701 establishes requirements and provides guidance when the auditor determines key audit matters and communicates them in the auditor’s report. When the auditor includes a Key Audit Matters section in the auditor’s report, this SA addresses the relationship between key audit matters and any additional communication in the auditor’s report in accordance with this SA. (Ref: Para. A1–A3)
3. SA 570 (Revised) establishes requirements and provides guidance about communication in the auditor’s report relating to going concern.
4. Appendices 1 and 2 identify SAs that contain specific requirements for the auditor to include Emphasis of Matter paragraphs or Other Matter paragraphs in the auditor’s report. In those circumstances, the requirements in this SA regarding the form of such paragraphs apply. (Ref: Para. A4)

Effective Date
5. This SA is effective for audits of financial statements for periods beginning on or after April 1, 2017.

Objective
7. The objective of the auditor, having formed an opinion on the financial statements, is to draw users’ attention, when in the auditor’s judgment it is necessary to do so, by way of clear additional communication in the auditor’s report, to:
   (a) A matter, although appropriately presented or disclosed in the financial statements, that is of such importance that it is fundamental to users’ understanding of the financial statements; or
   (b) As appropriate, any other matter that is relevant to users’ understanding of the audit, the auditor’s responsibilities or the auditor’s report.

1 SA 701, Communicating Key Audit Matters in the Independent Auditor’s Report
2 SA 570 (Revised), Going Concern
Definitions

7. For purposes of the SAs, the following terms have the meanings attributed below:

(a) Emphasis of Matter paragraph – A paragraph included in the auditor’s report that refers to a matter appropriately presented or disclosed in the financial statements that, in the auditor’s judgment, is of such importance that it is fundamental to users’ understanding of the financial statements.

(b) Other Matter paragraph – A paragraph included in the auditor’s report that refers to a matter other than those presented or disclosed in the financial statements that, in the auditor’s judgment, is relevant to users’ understanding of the audit, the auditor’s responsibilities or the auditor’s report.

Requirements

Emphasis of Matter Paragraphs in the Auditor’s Report

8. If the auditor considers it necessary to draw users’ attention to a matter presented or disclosed in the financial statements that, in the auditor’s judgment, is of such importance that it is fundamental to users’ understanding of the financial statements, the auditor shall include an Emphasis of Matter paragraph in the auditor’s report provided: (Ref: Para. A5–A6)

(a) The auditor would not be required to modify the opinion in accordance with SA 705 (Revised)\(^3\) as a result of the matter; and

(b) When SA 701 applies, the matter has not been determined to be a key audit matter to be communicated in the auditor’s report. (Ref: Para. A1–A3)

9. When the auditor includes an Emphasis of Matter paragraph in the auditor’s report, the auditor shall:

(a) Include the paragraph within a separate section of the auditor’s report with an appropriate heading that includes the term “Emphasis of Matter”;

(b) Include in the paragraph a clear reference to the matter being emphasized and to where relevant disclosures that fully describe the matter can be found in the financial statements. The paragraph shall refer only to information presented or disclosed in the financial statements; and

(c) Indicate that the auditor’s opinion is not modified in respect of the matter emphasized. (Ref: Para. A7–A8, A16–A17)

Other Matter Paragraphs in the Auditor’s Report

10. If the auditor considers it necessary to communicate a matter other than those that are presented or disclosed in the financial statements that, in the auditor’s judgment, is relevant to users’ understanding of the audit, the auditor’s responsibilities or the auditor’s report, the auditor shall include an Other Matter paragraph in the auditor’s report, provided:

(a) This is not prohibited by law or regulation; and

(b) When SA 701 applies, the matter has not been determined to be a key audit matter to be communicated in the auditor’s report. (Ref: Para. A9–A14)

11. When the auditor includes an Other Matter paragraph in the auditor’s report, the auditor shall include the paragraph within a separate section with the heading “Other Matter,” or other appropriate heading. (Ref: Para. A15–A17)

Communication with Those Charged with Governance

12. If the auditor expects to include an Emphasis of Matter or an Other Matter paragraph in the auditor’s report, the auditor shall:

---

\(^3\) SA 705 (Revised), Modifications to the Opinion in the Independent Auditor’s Report
I.540 Auditing Pronouncements

report, the auditor shall communicate with those charged with governance regarding this expectation and the wording of this paragraph. (Ref: Para. A18)

***

Application and Other Explanatory Material

The Relationship between Emphasis of Matter Paragraphs and Key Audit Matters in the Auditor’s Report (Ref: Para. 2, 8(b))

A1. Key audit matters are defined in SA 701 as those matters that, in the auditor’s professional judgment, were of most significance in the audit of the financial statements of the current period. Key audit matters are selected from matters communicated with those charged with governance, which include significant findings from the audit of the financial statements of the current period. Communicating key audit matters provides additional information to intended users of the financial statements to assist them in understanding those matters that, in the auditor’s professional judgment, were of most significance in the audit and may also assist them in understanding the entity and areas of significant management judgment in the audited financial statements. When SA 701 applies, the use of Emphasis of Matter paragraphs is not a substitute for a description of individual key audit matters.

A2. Matters that are determined to be key audit matters in accordance with SA 701 may also be, in the auditor’s judgment, fundamental to users’ understanding of the financial statements. In such cases, in communicating the matter as a key audit matter in accordance with SA 701, the auditor may wish to highlight or draw further attention to its relative importance. The auditor may do so by presenting the matter more prominently than other matters in the Key Audit Matters section (e.g., as the first matter) or by including additional information in the description of the key audit matter to indicate the importance of the matter to users’ understanding of the financial statements.

A3. There may be a matter that is not determined to be a key audit matter in accordance with SA 701 (i.e., because it did not require significant auditor attention), but which, in the auditor’s judgment, is fundamental to users’ understanding of the financial statements (e.g., a subsequent event). If the auditor considers it necessary to draw users’ attention to such a matter, the matter is included in an Emphasis of Matter paragraph in the auditor’s report in accordance with this SA.

Circumstances in Which an Emphasis of Matter Paragraph May Be Necessary (Ref: Para. 4, 8)

A4. Appendix 1 identifies SAs that contain specific requirements for the auditor to include Emphasis of Matter paragraphs in the auditor’s report in certain circumstances. These circumstances include:

- When a financial reporting framework prescribed by law or regulation would be unacceptable but for the fact that it is prescribed by law or regulation.
- To alert users that the financial statements are prepared in accordance with a special purpose framework.
- When facts become known to the auditor after the date of the auditor’s report and the auditor provides a new or amended auditor’s report (i.e., subsequent events).

A5. Examples of circumstances where the auditor may consider it necessary to include an Emphasis of Matter paragraph are:

- An uncertainty relating to the future outcome of exceptional litigation or regulatory action.

---

4 SA 260 (Revised), Communication with Those Charged with Governance, paragraph 16.
5 SA 560, Subsequent Events, paragraphs 12(b) and 16
• A significant subsequent event that occurs between the date of the financial statements and the date of the auditor’s report.6
• Early application (where permitted) of a new accounting standard that has a material effect on the financial statements.
• A major catastrophe that has had, or continues to have, a significant effect on the entity’s financial position.

A6. However, a widespread use of Emphasis of Matter paragraphs may diminish the effectiveness of the auditor’s communication about such matters.

Including an Emphasis of Matter Paragraph in the Auditor’s Report (Ref: Para. 9)

A7. The inclusion of an Emphasis of Matter paragraph in the auditor’s report does not affect the auditor’s opinion. An Emphasis of Matter paragraph is not a substitute for:

(a) A modified opinion in accordance with SA 705 (Revised) when required by the circumstances of a specific audit engagement;
(b) Disclosures in the financial statements that the applicable financial reporting framework requires management to make, or that are otherwise necessary to achieve fair presentation; or
(c) Reporting in accordance with SA 570 (Revised)7 when a material uncertainty exists relating to events or conditions that may cast significant doubt on an entity’s ability to continue as a going concern.

A8. Paragraphs A16–A17 provide further guidance on the placement of Emphasis of Matter paragraphs in particular circumstances.

Other Matter Paragraphs in the Auditor’s Report (Ref: Para. 10–11)

Circumstances in Which an Other Matter Paragraph May Be Necessary

Relevant to Users’ Understanding of the Audit

A9. SA 260 (Revised) requires the auditor to communicate with those charged with governance about the planned scope and timing of the audit, which includes communication about the significant risks identified by the auditor.8 Although matters relating to significant risks may be determined to be key audit matters, other planning and scoping matters (e.g., the planned scope of the audit, or the application of materiality in the context of the audit) are unlikely to be key audit matters because of how key audit matters are defined in SA 701. However, law or regulation may require the auditor to communicate about planning and scoping matters in the auditor’s report, or the auditor may consider it necessary to communicate about such matters in an Other Matter paragraph.

A10. In the rare circumstance where the auditor is unable to withdraw from an engagement even though the possible effect of an inability to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence due to a limitation on the scope of the audit imposed by management is pervasive,9 the auditor may consider it necessary to include an Other Matter paragraph in the auditor’s report to explain why it is not possible for the auditor to withdraw from the engagement.

Relevant to Users’ Understanding of the Auditor’s Responsibilities or the Auditor’s Report

---

6 SA 560, paragraph 6
7 SA 570 (Revised), paragraphs 22–23
8 SA 260 (Revised), paragraph 15
9 See paragraph 13(b)(ii) of SA 705 (Revised) for a discussion of this circumstance.
A11. Law, regulation or generally accepted practice may require or permit the auditor to elaborate on matters that provide further explanation of the auditor’s responsibilities in the audit of the financial statements or of the auditor’s report thereon. When the Other Matter section includes more than one matter that, in the auditor’s judgment, is relevant to users’ understanding of the audit, the auditor’s responsibilities or the auditor’s report, it may be helpful to use different sub-headings for each matter.

A12. An Other Matter paragraph does not deal with circumstances where the auditor has other reporting responsibilities that are in addition to the auditor’s responsibility under the SAs (see Other Reporting Responsibilities section in SA 700 (Revised)\(^\text{10}\)), or where the auditor has been asked to perform and report on additional specified procedures, or to express an opinion on specific matters.

Reporting on more than one set of financial statements

A13. An entity may prepare one set of financial statements in accordance with a general purpose framework (e.g., the national framework) and another set of financial statements in accordance with another general purpose framework (e.g., International Financial Reporting Standards), and engage the auditor to report on both sets of financial statements. If the auditor has determined that the frameworks are acceptable in the respective circumstances, the auditor may include an Other Matter paragraph in the auditor’s report, referring to the fact that another set of financial statements has been prepared by the same entity in accordance with another general purpose framework and that the auditor has issued a report on those financial statements.

Restriction on distribution or use of the auditor’s report

A14. Financial statements prepared for a specific purpose may be prepared in accordance with a general purpose framework because the intended users have determined that such general purpose financial statements meet their financial information needs. Since the auditor’s report is intended for specific users, the auditor may consider it necessary in the circumstances to include an Other Matter paragraph, stating that the auditor’s report is intended solely for the intended users, and should not be distributed to or used by other parties.

Including an Other Matter Paragraph in the Auditor’s Report

A15. The content of an Other Matter paragraph reflects clearly that such other matter is not required to be presented and disclosed in the financial statements. An Other Matter paragraph does not include information that the auditor is prohibited from providing by law, regulation or other professional standards, for example, ethical standards relating to confidentiality of information. An Other Matter paragraph also does not include information that is required to be provided by management.

Placement of Emphasis of Matter Paragraphs and Other Matter Paragraphs in the Auditor’s Report

(Ref: Para. 9, 11)

A16. The placement of an Emphasis of Matter paragraph or Other Matter paragraph in the auditor’s report depends on the nature of the information to be communicated, and the auditor’s judgment as to the relative significance of such information to intended users compared to other elements required to be reported in accordance with SA 700 (Revised). For example:

Emphasis of Matter Paragraphs

- When the Emphasis of Matter paragraph relates to the applicable financial reporting framework, including circumstances where the auditor determines that the financial reporting framework prescribed

---

\(^{10}\) SA 700 (Revised), Forming an Opinion and Reporting on Financial Statements, paragraphs 42–44.
by law or regulation would otherwise be unacceptable,\textsuperscript{11} the auditor may consider it necessary to place the paragraph immediately following the Basis of Opinion section to provide appropriate context to the auditor’s opinion.

- When a Key Audit Matters section is presented in the auditor’s report, an Emphasis of Matter paragraph may be presented either directly before or after the Key Audit Matters section, based on the auditor’s judgment as to the relative significance of the information included in the Emphasis of Matter paragraph. The auditor may also add further context to the heading “Emphasis of Matter”, such as “Emphasis of Matter – Subsequent Event”, to differentiate the Emphasis of Matter paragraph from the individual matters described in the Key Audit Matters section.

Other Matter Paragraphs

- When a Key Audit Matters section is presented in the auditor’s report and an Other Matter paragraph is also considered necessary, the auditor may add further context to the heading “Other Matter”, such as “Other Matter – Scope of the Audit”, to differentiate the Other Matter paragraph from the individual matters described in the Key Audit Matters section.

- When an Other Matter paragraph is included to draw users’ attention to a matter relating to Other Reporting Responsibilities addressed in the auditor’s report, the paragraph may be included in the Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements section.

- When relevant to all the auditor’s responsibilities or users’ understanding of the auditor’s report, the Other Matter paragraph may be included as a separate section following the Report on the Audit of the Financial Statements and the Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements.

A17. Appendix 3 is an illustration of the interaction between the Key Audit Matters section, an Emphasis of Matter paragraph and an Other Matter paragraph when all are presented in the auditor’s report. The illustrative report in Appendix 4 includes an Emphasis of Matter paragraph in an auditor’s report for an entity other than a listed entity that contains a qualified opinion and for which key audit matters have not been communicated.

Communication with Those Charged with Governance (Ref. Para. 12)

A18. The communication required by paragraph 12 enables those charged with governance to be made aware of the nature of any specific matters that the auditor intends to highlight in the auditor’s report, and provides them with an opportunity to obtain further clarification from the auditor where necessary. Where the inclusion of an Other Matter paragraph on a particular matter in the auditor’s report recurs on each successive engagement, the auditor may determine that it is unnecessary to repeat the communication on each engagement, unless otherwise required to do so by law or regulation.

Appendix 1

(Ref: Para. 4, A4)

List of SAs Containing Requirements for Emphasis of Matter Paragraphs

This appendix identifies paragraphs in other SAs that require the auditor to include an Emphasis of Matter paragraph in the auditor’s report in certain circumstances. The list is not a substitute for considering the requirements and related application and other explanatory material in SAs.

- SA 210, \textit{Agreeing the Terms of Audit Engagements} – paragraph 19(b)

\textsuperscript{11} For example, as required by SA 210, \textit{Agreeing the Terms of Audit Engagements}, paragraph 19 and SA 800, \textit{Special Considerations—Audits of Financial Statements Prepared in Accordance with Special Purpose Frameworks}, paragraph 14.
I.544 Auditing Pronouncements

- SA 560, Subsequent Events – paragraphs 12(b) and 16
- SA 800, Special Considerations—Audits of Financial Statements Prepared in Accordance with Special Purpose Frameworks – paragraph 14

Appendix 2

(Ref: Para. 4)

List of SAs Containing Requirements for Other Matter Paragraphs

This appendix identifies paragraphs in other SAs that require the auditor to include an Other Matter paragraph in the auditor’s report in certain circumstances. The list is not a substitute for considering the requirements and related application and other explanatory material in SAs.

- SA 560, Subsequent Events – paragraphs 12(b) and 16
- SA 710, Comparative Information—Corresponding Figures and Comparative Financial Statements – paragraphs 13–14, 16–17 and 19
- SA 720, The Auditor’s Responsibilities Relating to Other Information in Documents Containing Audited Financial Statements – paragraph 10(a)

Appendix 3

(Ref: Para. A17)

Illustration of an Auditor’s Report that Includes a Key Audit Matters Section, an Emphasis of Matter Paragraph, and an Other Matter Paragraph

For purposes of this illustrative auditor’s report, the following circumstances are assumed:

- Audit of a complete set of financial statements of a listed company (registered under the Companies Act, 2013) using a fair presentation framework.
- The financial statements are prepared by management of the entity in accordance with the Accounting Standards prescribed under section 133 of the Companies Act, 2013 (a general purpose framework).
- The terms of the audit engagement reflect the description of management’s responsibility for the financial statements in SA 210.
- The auditor has concluded an unmodified (i.e., “clean”) opinion is appropriate based on the audit evidence obtained.
- The relevant ethical requirements that apply to the audit are those of the ICAI’s Code of Ethics and the provisions of the Companies Act, 2013.
- Based on the audit evidence obtained, the auditor has concluded that a material uncertainty does not exist related to events or conditions that may cast significant doubt on the entity’s ability to continue as a going concern in accordance with SA 570 (Revised).
- Between the date of the financial statements and the date of the auditor’s report, there was a fire in the entity’s production facilities, which was disclosed by the entity as a subsequent event. In the auditor’s judgment, the matter is of such importance that it is fundamental to users’ understanding of the financial statements. The matter did not require significant auditor attention in the audit of the financial statements in the current period.
- Key audit matters have been communicated in accordance with SA 701.
- Corresponding figures are presented, and the prior period’s financial statements were audited by a predecessor auditor. The auditor is not prohibited by law or regulation from referring to the predecessor...
Part I: Engagement and Quality Control Standards

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR’S REPORT

To the Members of ABC Company Limited

Report on the Audit of the Standalone Financial Statements

Opinion

We have audited the standalone financial statements of ABC Company Limited ("the Company"), which comprise the balance sheet as at March 31, 20X1, and the statement of Profit & Loss, (statement of changes in equity) and the statement of cash flows for the year then ended, and notes to the financial statements, including a summary of significant accounting policies and other explanatory information (in which are included the Returns for the year ended on that date audited by the branch auditors of the Company's branches located at (location of branches))

In our opinion, and to the best of our information and according to the explanations given to us the aforesaid financial statements, give a true and fair view, in conformity with the accounting principles generally accepted in India, of the state of affairs of the Company as at March 31st, 20XX and profit/loss, (changes in equity) and its cash flows for the year ended on that date.

Basis for Opinion

We conducted our audit in accordance with Standards on Auditing (SAs). Our responsibilities under those standards are further described in the Auditor's Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Statements section of our report. We are independent of the Company in accordance with the ethical requirements that are relevant to our audit of the financial statements as per the ICAI’s Code of Ethics and the provisions of the Companies Act, 2013, and we have fulfilled our other ethical responsibilities in accordance with these requirements. We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our opinion.

Emphasis of Matter

We draw attention to Note X of the financial statements, which describes the effects of a fire in the Company’s production facilities. Our opinion is not modified in respect of this matter.

Key Audit Matters

Key audit matters are those matters that, in our professional judgment, were of most significance in our audit of the financial statements of the current period. These matters were addressed in the context of our audit of the financial statements as a whole, and in forming our opinion thereon, and we do not provide a separate opinion on these matters.

[Description of each key audit matter in accordance with SA 701.]

© The Institute of Chartered Accountants of India
Other Matter

The financial statements of ABC Company for the year ended March 31, 20X0, were audited by another auditor who expressed an unmodified opinion on those statements on March 31, 20X1.

Responsibilities of Management and Those Charged with Governance for the Financial Statements

[Reporting in accordance with SA 700 (Revised) – see Illustration 1 in SA 700 (Revised).]

Auditor’s Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Statements

[Reporting in accordance with SA 700 (Revised) – see Illustration 1 in SA 700 (Revised).]

Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements

[Reporting in accordance with SA 700 (Revised) – see Illustration 1 in SA 700 (Revised).]

For XYZ & Co
Chartered Accountants
(Firm’s Registration No.)

Signature
(Name of the Member signing the Audit Report)
(Designation15)
(Membership No. XXXXX)

Place of Signature:
Date:

Appendix 4

(Ref: Para. A8)

Illustration of an Auditor’s Report Containing a Qualified Opinion Due to a Departure from the Applicable Financial Reporting Framework and that Includes an Emphasis of Matter Paragraph

For purposes of this illustrative auditor’s report, the following circumstances are assumed:

• Audit of a complete set of financial statements of an company other than a listed company (registered under the Companies Act, 2013) using a fair presentation framework.
• The financial statements are prepared by management of the entity in accordance with the Accounting Standards prescribed under section 133 of the Companies Act, 2013 (a general purpose framework).
• The terms of the audit engagement reflect the description of management’s responsibility for the financial statements in SA 210.
• A departure from the applicable financial reporting framework resulted in a qualified opinion.
• The relevant ethical requirements that apply to the audit are the ICAI’s Code of Ethics and the provisions of the Companies Act, 2013.
• Based on the audit evidence obtained, the auditor has concluded that a material uncertainty does not exist related to events or conditions that may cast significant doubt on the entity’s ability to continue as a going concern in accordance with SA 570 (Revised).

15 Partner or Proprietor, as the case may be
Between the date of the financial statements and the date of the auditor’s report, there was a fire in the entity’s production facilities, which was disclosed by the entity as a subsequent event. In the auditor’s judgment, the matter is of such importance that it is fundamental to users’ understanding of the financial statements. The matter did not require significant auditor attention in the audit of the financial statements in the current period.

The auditor is not required, and has otherwise not decided, to communicate key audit matters in accordance with SA 701.

Those responsible for oversight of the financial statements differ from those responsible for the preparation of the financial statements.

In addition to the audit of the financial statements, the auditor has other reporting responsibilities required under the Companies Act, 2013.

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR’S REPORT
To the Members of ABC Company Limited

Report on the Audit of the Standalone Financial Statements

Qualified Opinion

We have audited the standalone financial statements of ABC Limited (‘the Company’), which comprise the balance sheet as at March 31, 20X1, and the statement of Profit and Loss, (statement of changes in equity) and the statement of cash flows for the year then ended, and notes to the financial statements, including a summary of significant accounting policies and other explanatory information (in which are included the Returns for the year ended on that date audited by the branch auditors of the Company’s branches located at (location of branches)\(^2\).

In our opinion and to the best of our information and according to the explanations given to us, except for the effects of the matter described in the Basis for Qualified Opinion section of our report, the aforesaid financial statements present fairly, in all material respects, or give a true and fair view in conformity with the accounting principles generally accepted in India of the state of affairs of the Company as at March 31, 2XXX and profit/loss, (changes in equity) and its cash flows for the year ended on that date.

Basis for Qualified Opinion

The Company’s short-term marketable securities are carried in the statement of financial position at xxx. Management has not marked these securities to market but has instead stated them at cost, which constitutes a departure from the Accounting Standards prescribed in section 133 of the Companies Act, 2013. The Company’s records indicate that had management marked the marketable securities to market, the Company would have recognized an unrealized loss of Rs.xxx in the statement of comprehensive income for the year. The carrying amount of the securities in the statement of financial position would have been reduced by the same amount at March 31, 20X1, and income tax, net income and shareholders’ equity would have been reduced by Rs.xxx, Rs.xxx and Rs.xxx, respectively.

We conducted our audit in accordance with Standards on Auditing (SAs). Our responsibilities under those standards are further described in the Auditor’s Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Statements section of our report. We are independent of the Company in accordance with the ethical requirements that are relevant to our audit of the financial statements under the provisions of the Companies Act, 2013, and we have fulfilled our other ethical responsibilities in accordance with these requirements and the ICAI’s Code of

\(^2\) The sub-title “Report on the Audit of the Standalone Financial Statements” is unnecessary in circumstances when the second sub-title “Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements” is not applicable.
I.548 Auditing Pronouncements

Ethics. We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our qualified opinion.

Emphasis of Matter – Effects of a Fire
We draw attention to Note X of the financial statements, which describes the effects of a fire in the Company’s production facilities. Our opinion is not modified in respect of this matter.

Responsibilities of Management and Those Charged with Governance for the Financial Statements
[Reporting in accordance with SA 700(Revised)–see Illustration 1 in SA 700(Revised).]

Auditor’s Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Statements
[Reporting in accordance with SA 700(Revised – see Illustration 1 in SA 700(Revised).]

Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements
[Reporting in accordance with SA 700 (Revised) – see Illustration 1 in SA 700 (Revised).]

For XYZ & Co
Chartered Accountants
(Firm’s Registration No.)

Signature
(Name of the Member signing the Audit Report)
(Designation17)
(Membership No. XXXXX)

Place of Signature:
Date:

17 Partner or Proprietor, as the case may be
Introduction

Scope of this SA

1. This Standard on Auditing (SA) deals with the auditor’s responsibilities regarding comparative information in an audit of financial statements. When the financial statements of the prior period have been audited by a predecessor auditor or were not audited, the requirements and guidance in SA 510\(^1\) regarding opening balances also apply.

The Nature of Comparative Information

2. The nature of the comparative information that is presented in an entity’s financial statements depends on the requirements of the applicable financial reporting framework. There are two different broad approaches to the auditor’s reporting responsibilities in respect of such comparative information: corresponding figures\(^2\) and comparative financial statements. The approach to be adopted is often specified by law or regulation but may also be specified in the terms of engagement.

3. The essential audit reporting differences between the approaches are:
   (a) For corresponding figures, the auditor’s opinion on the financial statements refers to the current period only; whereas
   (b) For comparative financial statements, the auditor’s opinion refers to each period for which financial statements are presented.

This SA addresses separately the auditor’s reporting requirements for each approach.

Effective Date

4. This SA is effective for audits of financial statements for periods beginning on or after April 1, 2011.

Objectives

5. The objectives of the auditor are:
   (a) To obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence about whether the comparative information included in the financial statements has been presented, in all material respects, in accordance with the requirements for comparative information in the applicable financial reporting framework; and
   (b) To report in accordance with the auditor’s reporting responsibilities.

---

\(^{1}\) Published in the April, 2010 issue of the Journal.

\(^{2}\) Typically, financial reporting frameworks in India use the corresponding figures approach for general purpose financial statements.
Definitions
6. For purposes of the SAs, the following terms have the meanings attributed below:
   (a) Comparative information – The amounts and disclosures included in the financial statements in respect of one or more prior periods in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework.
   (b) Corresponding figures – Comparative information where amounts and other disclosures for the prior period are included as an integral part of the current period financial statements, and are intended to be read only in relation to the amounts and other disclosures relating to the current period (referred to as “current period figures”). The level of detail presented in the corresponding amounts and disclosures is dictated primarily by its relevance to the current period figures.
   (c) Comparative financial statements – Comparative information where amounts and other disclosures for the prior period are included for comparison with the financial statements of the current period but, if audited, are referred to in the auditor’s opinion. The level of information included in those comparative financial statements is comparable with that of the financial statements of the current period.

For purposes of this SA, references to “prior period” should be read as “prior periods” when the comparative information includes amounts and disclosures for more than one period.

Requirements
Audit Procedures
7. The auditor shall determine whether the financial statements include the comparative information required by the applicable financial reporting framework and whether such information is appropriately classified. For this purpose, the auditor shall evaluate whether:
   (a) The comparative information agrees with the amounts and other disclosures presented in the prior period; and
   (b) The accounting policies reflected in the comparative information are consistent with those applied in the current period or, if there have been changes in accounting policies, whether those changes have been properly accounted for and adequately presented and disclosed.

8. If the auditor becomes aware of a possible material misstatement in the comparative information while performing the current period audit, the auditor shall perform such additional audit procedures as are necessary in the circumstances to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence to determine whether a material misstatement exists. If the auditor had audited the prior period’s financial statements, the auditor shall also follow the relevant requirements of SA 560.

9. As required by SA 580, the auditor shall request written representations for all periods referred to in the auditor’s opinion. The auditor shall also obtain a specific written representation regarding any prior period item that is separately disclosed in the current year’s statement of profit and loss. (Ref: Para. A1)

Audit Reporting
Corresponding Figures
10. When corresponding figures are presented, the auditor’s opinion shall not refer to the corresponding figures except in the circumstances described in paragraphs 11, 12, and 14. (Ref: Para. A2)
11. If the auditor’s report on the prior period, as previously issued, included a qualified opinion, a disclaimer of opinion, or an adverse opinion and the matter which gave rise to the modification is unresolved, the auditor

---

3 SA 560, “Subsequent Events”, paragraphs 14-17.
Part I: Engagement and Quality Control Standards  I.551

shall modify the auditor’s opinion on the current period’s financial statements. In the Basis for Modification paragraph in the auditor’s report, the auditor shall either:

(a) Refer to both the current period’s figures and the corresponding figures in the description of the matter giving rise to the modification when the effects or possible effects of the matter on the current period’s figures are material; or

(b) In other cases, explain that the audit opinion has been modified because of the effects or possible effects of the unresolved matter on the comparability of the current period's figures and the corresponding figures. (Ref: Para. A3-A5)

12. If the auditor obtains audit evidence that a material misstatement exists in the prior period financial statements on which an unmodified opinion has been previously issued, the auditor shall verify whether the misstatement has been dealt with as required under the applicable financial reporting framework and, if that is not the case, the auditor shall express a qualified opinion or an adverse opinion in the auditor’s report on the current period financial statements, modified with respect to the corresponding figures included therein. (Ref: Para. A6)

Prior Period Financial Statements Audited by a Predecessor Auditor

13. If the financial statements of the prior period were audited by a predecessor auditor and the auditor is permitted by law or regulation to refer to the predecessor auditor’s report on the corresponding figures and decides to do so, the auditor shall state in an Other Matter paragraph in the auditor’s report:

(a) That the financial statements of the prior period were audited by the predecessor auditor;

(b) The type of opinion expressed by the predecessor auditor and, if the opinion was modified, the reasons therefore; and

(c) The date of that report. (Ref: Para. A7)

Prior Period Financial Statements Not Audited

14. If the prior period financial statements were not audited, the auditor shall state in an Other Matter paragraph in the auditor’s report that the corresponding figures are unaudited. Such a statement does not, however, relieve the auditor of the requirement to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence that the opening balances do not contain misstatements that materially affect the current period’s financial statements. (Ref: Para. A7a)

Comparative Financial Statements

15. When comparative financial statements are presented, the auditor’s opinion shall refer to each period for which financial statements are presented and on which an audit opinion is expressed. (Ref: Para. A8-A9)

16. When reporting on prior period financial statements in connection with the current period’s audit, if the auditor’s opinion on such prior period financial statements differs from the opinion the auditor previously expressed, the auditor shall disclose the substantive reasons for the different opinion in an Other Matter paragraph in accordance with SA 706. (Ref: Para. A10)

Prior Period Financial Statements Audited by a Predecessor Auditor

17. If the financial statements of the prior period were audited by a predecessor auditor, in addition to expressing an opinion on the current period’s financial statements, the auditor shall state in an Other Matter paragraph:

5 SA 510, paragraph 6.

(a) That the financial statements of the prior period were audited by a predecessor auditor;
(b) The type of opinion expressed by the predecessor auditor and, if the opinion was modified, the reasons therefor; and
(c) The date of that report,

unless the predecessor auditor’s report on the prior period’s financial statements is revised with the financial statements.

18. If the auditor concludes that a material misstatement exists that affects the prior period financial statements on which the predecessor auditor had previously reported without modification, the auditor shall communicate the misstatement with the appropriate level of management and those charged with governance and request that the predecessor auditor be informed. If the prior period financial statements are amended, and the predecessor auditor agrees to issue a new auditor’s report on the amended financial statements of the prior period, the auditor shall report only on the current period. (Ref: Para. A11)

Prior Period Financial Statements Not Audited

19. If the prior period financial statements were not audited, the auditor shall state in an Other Matter paragraph that the comparative financial statements are unaudited. Such a statement does not, however, relieve the auditor of the requirement to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence that the opening balances do not contain misstatements that materially affect the current period’s financial statements7.

Application and Other Explanatory Material

Audit Procedures

Written Representations (Ref: Para. 9)

A1. In the case of comparative financial statements, the written representations are requested for all periods referred to in the auditor’s opinion because management needs to re-affirm that the written representations it previously made with respect to the prior period remain appropriate. In the case of corresponding figures, the written representations are requested for the financial statements of the current period only because the auditor’s opinion is on those financial statements, which include the corresponding figures. However, the auditor requests a specific written representation regarding any prior period item that is separately disclosed in the current year’s statement of profit and loss.

Audit Reporting

Corresponding Figures

No Reference in Auditor’s Opinion (Ref: Para. 10)

A2. The auditor’s opinion does not refer to the corresponding figures because the auditor’s opinion is on the current period financial statements as a whole, including the corresponding figures.

Modification in Auditor’s Report on the Prior Period Unresolved (Ref: Para. 11)

A3. When the auditor’s report on the prior period, as previously issued, included a qualified opinion, a disclaimer of opinion, or an adverse opinion and the matter which gave rise to the modified opinion is resolved and properly accounted for or disclosed in the financial statements in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework, the auditor’s opinion on the current period need not refer to the previous modification.

A4. When the auditor’s opinion on the prior period, as previously expressed, was modified, the unresolved matter that gave rise to the modification may not be relevant to the current period figures. Nevertheless, a

7 SA 510, paragraph 6.
qualified opinion, a disclaimer of opinion, or an adverse opinion (as applicable) may be required on the current period's financial statements because of the effects or possible effects of the unresolved matter on the comparability of the current and corresponding figures.

A5. Illustrative examples of the auditor's report if the auditor's report on the prior period included a modified opinion and the matter giving rise to the modification is unresolved are contained in Examples A and B of the Appendix.

Misstatement in Prior Period Financial Statements (Ref: Para. 12)

A6. When the prior period financial statements that are misstated have not been amended and an auditor's report thereon has not been issued in accordance with the requirements of SA 560, "Subsequent Events", but the corresponding figures have been properly dealt with as required under the applicable financial reporting framework and the appropriate disclosures have been made in the current period financial statements, the auditor's report may include an Emphasis of Matter paragraph describing the circumstances and referring to, where relevant, disclosures that fully describe the matter that can be found in the financial statements (see SA 706).

Prior Period Financial Statements Audited by a Predecessor Auditor (Ref: Para. 13)

A7. An illustrative example of the auditor's report if the prior period financial statements were audited by a predecessor auditor and the auditor is permitted by law or regulation to refer to the predecessor auditor's report on the corresponding figures is contained in Example C of the Appendix.

Prior Period Financial Statements Not Audited (Ref: Para.14)

A7a. Where prior period financial statements were not audited, the auditor should request the management to disclose this fact on the face of the current period financial statements with respect to the corresponding figures.

Comparative Financial Statements

Reference in Auditor's Opinion (Ref: Para. 15)

A8. Because the auditor's report on comparative financial statements applies to the financial statements for each of the periods presented, the auditor may express a qualified opinion or an adverse opinion, disclaim an opinion, or include an Emphasis of Matter paragraph with respect to one or more periods, while expressing a different auditor's opinion on the financial statements of the other period.

A9. An illustrative example of the auditor’s report if the auditor is required to report on both the current and the prior period financial statements in connection with the current year’s audit and the prior period included a modified opinion and the matter giving rise to the modification is unresolved, is contained in Example D of the Appendix.

Opinion on Prior Period Financial Statements Different from Previous Opinion (Ref: Para. 16)

A10. When reporting on the prior period financial statements in connection with the current period’s audit, the opinion expressed on the prior period financial statements may be different from the opinion previously expressed if the auditor becomes aware of circumstances or events that materially affect the financial statements of a prior period during the course of the audit of the current period. In some circumstances, the auditor may have additional reporting responsibilities designed to prevent future reliance on the auditor’s previously issued report on the prior period financial statements.

Prior Period Financial Statements Audited by a Predecessor Auditor (Ref: Para. 18)

A11. The predecessor auditor may be unable or unwilling to revise the auditor’s report on the prior period financial statements. An Other Matter paragraph of the auditor’s report may indicate that the predecessor auditor reported on the financial statements of the prior period before amendment. In addition, if the auditor is
engaged to audit and obtains sufficient appropriate audit evidence to be satisfied as to the appropriateness of the amendment, the auditor’s report may also include the following paragraph:

As part of our audit of the 20X2 financial statements, we also audited the adjustments described in Note X that were applied to amend the 20X1 financial statements. In our opinion, such adjustments are appropriate and have been properly applied. We were not engaged to audit, review, or apply any procedures to the 20X1 financial statements of the company other than with respect to the adjustments and, accordingly, we do not express an opinion or any other form of assurance on the 20X1 financial statements taken as a whole.

Material Modifications vis-a-vis ISA 710, “Comparative Information—Corresponding Figures and Comparative Financial Statements”

Deletions
1. Paragraphs 9 and 12 of ISA 710 deal with the restatement of the prior period financial statements. Since in India, Accounting Standard (AS) 5, “Net Profit or Loss for the Period, Prior Period Items and Changes in Accounting Policies” requires that prior period items should be separately disclosed in the Statement of Profit and Loss in a manner that their impact on the current profit or loss can be perceived, the restatement of the prior period financial statements does not exist in the Indian scenario. Hence, to align with the requirements of AS 5, the requirement of restatement of prior period items has been replaced with the requirement to disclose the prior period items in the current year’s Statement of Profit & Loss. Corresponding changes have also been made at the relevant places of the Standard.
2. Paragraph 17 of ISA 710 deals with the situation wherein the predecessor auditor reissue his audit report. Since in India, the nomenclature, “Reissue” is not used for the re-issuance of the audit report by an auditor, the same has been replaced with the word, “Revised”. Corresponding changes have also been made at the relevant places of the Standard.

Example Auditors’ Reports
Example A - Corresponding Figures (Ref: Para. A5)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Report illustrative of the circumstances described in paragraph 11(a), as follows:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• The auditor’s report on the prior period, as previously issued, included a qualified opinion.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• The matter giving rise to the modification is unresolved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• The effects or possible effects of the matter on the current period’s figures are material and require a modification to the auditor’s opinion regarding the current period figures.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR’S REPORT
To the Members of ABC Company Limited

Report on the Financial Statements

We have audited the accompanying financial statements of ABC Company Limited (“the Company”), which comprise the balance sheet as at March 31, 20X1, and the statement of profit and loss, and cash flow statement for the year then ended, and a summary of significant accounting policies and other explanatory information.

8 The sub-title “Report on the Financial Statements” is unnecessary in circumstances when the second sub-title “Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements” is not applicable.
Management’s Responsibility for the Financial Statements

Management is responsible for the preparation and presentation of these financial statements that give a true and fair view of the state of affairs, results of operations and cash flows of the Company in accordance with the Accounting Standards referred to in sub-section (3C) of section 211 of the Companies Act, 1956 (“the Act”). This responsibility includes the design, implementation and maintenance of internal control relevant to the preparation and fair presentation of financial statements that are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error.

Auditor’s Responsibility

Our responsibility is to express an opinion on these financial statements based on our audit. We conducted our audit in accordance with the Standards on Auditing issued by the Institute of Chartered Accountants of India (ICAI). Those Standards require that we comply with ethical requirements and plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free from material misstatement.

An audit involves performing procedures to obtain audit evidence about the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. The procedures selected depend on the auditor’s judgment, including the assessment of the risks of material misstatement of the financial statements, whether due to fraud or error. In making those risk assessments, the auditor considers internal control relevant to the entity's preparation of the financial statements that give a true and fair view in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the entity’s internal control. An audit also includes evaluating the appropriateness of accounting policies used and the reasonableness of accounting estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the financial statements.

We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our qualified audit opinion.

Basis for Qualified Opinion

As discussed in Note X to the financial statements, no depreciation has been provided in the financial statements which constitutes a departure from the Accounting Standards referred to in sub-section (3C) of section 211 of the Companies Act, 1956 (“the Act”). This is the result of a decision taken by management at the start of the preceding financial year and caused us to qualify our audit opinion on the financial statements relating to that year. Based on the straight-line method of depreciation and annual rates of 5% for the building and 20% for the equipment, the loss for the year should be increased by ₹ XXX in 20X1 and ₹ XXX in 20X0, property, plant and equipment should be reduced by accumulated depreciation of ₹ XXX in 20X1 and ₹ XXX in 20X0, and the accumulated loss should be increased by ₹ XXX in 20X1 and ₹ XXX in 20X0.

Qualified Opinion

In our opinion, except for the effects of the matter described in the Basis for Qualified Opinion paragraph, the financial statements give a true and fair view of the state of affairs of the Company as of March 31, 20X1, and of its results of operations and its cash flows for the year then ended in accordance with the Accounting Standards referred to in sub-section (3C) of section 211 of the Companies Act, 1956 (“the Act”).

---

9 The underlined text has been added pursuant to decision of Council of ICAI taken at its 329th adjourned meeting held in January 2014. The complete text of the Announcement in this regard has been published in Paragraph C, “Announcements/Clarifications” of Section 1, “Announcements of the Council regarding Status of Various Documents issued by the Institute of Chartered Accountants of India”, included in Volume I.A of the Handbook.
I.556 Auditing Pronouncements

Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements

[Form and content of this section of the auditor’s report will vary depending on the nature of the auditor’s other reporting responsibilities.]

For XYZ and Co.
Chartered Accountants
Firm’s Registration Number

Signature
(Name of the Member Signing the Audit Report)
(Designation)
Membership Number

Place of Signature
Date

Example B - Corresponding Figures (Ref: Para. A5)

Report illustrative of the circumstances described in paragraph 11(b), as follows:

- The auditor’s report on the prior period, as previously issued, included a qualified opinion.
- The matter giving rise to the modification is unresolved.
- The effects or possible effects of the matter on the current period’s figures are immaterial but require a modification to the auditor’s opinion because of the effects or possible effects of the unresolved matter on the comparability of the current period’s figures and the corresponding figures.

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR’S REPORT
To the Members of ABC Company Limited

Report on the Financial Statements

We have audited the accompanying financial statements of ABC Company Limited (“the Company”), which comprise the balance sheet as at March 31, 20X1, and the statement of profit and loss, and cash flow statement for the year then ended, and a summary of significant accounting policies and other explanatory information.

Management’s Responsibility for the Financial Statements

Management is responsible for the preparation and presentation of these financial statements that give a true and fair view of the state of affairs, results of operations and cash flows of the Company in accordance with the Accounting Standards referred to in sub-section (3C) of section 211 of the Companies Act, 1956 (“the Act”). This responsibility includes the design, implementation and maintenance of internal control relevant to the preparation and fair presentation of financial statements that are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error.

Auditor’s Responsibility

Our responsibility is to express an opinion on these financial statements based on our audit. We conducted our

10 Partner or Proprietor, as the case may be.
11 The sub-title “Report on the Financial Statements” is unnecessary in circumstances when the second sub-title “Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements” is not applicable.
audit in accordance with the Standards on Auditing issued by the Institute of Chartered Accountants of India (ICAI). Those Standards require that we comply with ethical requirements and plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free from material misstatement. An audit involves performing procedures to obtain audit evidence about the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. The procedures selected depend on the auditor's judgment, including the assessment of the risks of material misstatement of the financial statements, whether due to fraud or error. In making those risk assessments, the auditor considers internal control relevant to the entity’s preparation and presentation of the financial statements that give a true and fair view in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the entity's internal control. An audit also includes evaluating the appropriateness of accounting policies used and the reasonableness of accounting estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the financial statements.

We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our qualified audit opinion.

**Basis for Qualified Opinion**

Because we were appointed auditors of the Company during 20X0, we were not able to observe the counting of the physical inventories at the beginning of that period or satisfy ourselves concerning those inventory quantities by alternative means. Since opening inventories affect the determination of the results of operations, we were unable to determine whether adjustments to the results of operations and opening retained earnings might be necessary for 20X0. Our audit opinion on the financial statements for the year ended 31 March, 20X0 was modified accordingly. Our opinion on the current period’s financial statements is also modified because of the possible effect of this matter on the comparability of the current period’s figures and the corresponding figures.

**Qualified Opinion**

In our opinion, except for the possible effects on the corresponding figures of the matter described in the Basis for Qualified Opinion paragraph, the financial statements give a true and fair view of the state of affairs of the Company as of March 31, 20X1, and of its results of operations and its cash flows for the year then ended in accordance with the Accounting Standards referred to in sub-section (3C) of section 211 of the Companies Act, 1956 (“the Act”).

**Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements**

[Form and content of this section of the auditor's report will vary depending on the nature of the auditor's other reporting responsibilities.]

For XYZ and Co.
Chartered Accountants
Firm’s Registration Number

Signature
(Responsibility of the Member Signing the Audit Report)
(Designation)
Membership Number

Place of Signature
Date

---

12 The underlined text has been added pursuant to decision of Council of ICAI taken at its 329th adjourned meeting held in January 2014. The complete text of the Announcement in this regard has been published in Paragraph C, “Announcements/Clarifications” of Section 1, “Announcements of the Council regarding Status of Various Documents issued by the Institute of Chartered Accountants of India”, included in Volume IA of the Handbook.

13 Partner or Proprietor, as the case may be.
**Example C - Corresponding Figures** *(Ref: Para. A7)*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Report illustrative of the circumstances described in paragraph 13, as follows</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• The prior period’s financial statements were audited by a predecessor auditor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• The auditor is permitted by law or regulation to refer to the predecessor auditor’s report on the corresponding figures and decides to do so.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**INDEPENDENT AUDITOR’S REPORT**

To the Members of ABC Company Limited

**Report on the Financial Statements**

We have audited the accompanying financial statements of ABC Company Ltd. (“the Company”), which comprise the balance sheet as at March 31, 20X1, and the statement of profit and loss, and cash flow statement for the year then ended, and a summary of significant accounting policies and other explanatory information.

**Management’s Responsibility for the Financial Statements**

Management is responsible for the preparation and presentation of these financial statements that give a true and fair view of the state of affairs, results of operations and cash flows of the Company in accordance with the Accounting Standards referred to in sub-section (3C) of section 211 of the Companies Act, 1956 (“the Act”). This responsibility includes the design, implementation and maintenance of internal control relevant to the preparation and fair presentation of financial statements that are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error.

**Auditor’s Responsibility**

Our responsibility is to express an opinion on these financial statements based on our audit. We conducted our audit in accordance with the Standards on Auditing issued by the Institute of Chartered Accountants of India (ICAI). Those Standards require that we comply with ethical requirements and plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free from material misstatement.

An audit involves performing procedures to obtain audit evidence about the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. The procedures selected depend on the auditor’s judgment, including the assessment of the risks of material misstatement of the financial statements, whether due to fraud or error. In making those risk assessments, the auditor considers internal control relevant to the entity’s preparation and presentation of the financial statements that give a true and fair view in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the entity’s internal control. An audit also includes evaluating the appropriateness of accounting policies used and the reasonableness of accounting estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the financial statements.

We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our audit opinion.

---

14 The sub-title “Report on the Financial Statements” is unnecessary in circumstances when the second sub-title “Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements” is not applicable.

15 The underlined text has been added pursuant to decision of Council of ICAI taken at its 329th adjourned meeting held in January 2014. The complete text of the Announcement in this regard has been published in Paragraph ‘C’, “Announcements/Clarifications” of Section 1, “Announcements of the Council regarding Status of Various Documents issued by the Institute of Chartered Accountants of India”, included in Volume I.A of the Handbook.
Part I: Engagement and Quality Control Standards

Opinion
In our opinion, the financial statements give a true and fair view of the state of affairs of the Company as of March 31, 20X1, and of its results of operations and its cash flows for the year then ended in accordance with the Accounting Standards referred to in sub-section (3C) of section 211 of the Companies Act, 1956 (“the Act”).

Other Matters
The financial statements of the Company for the year ended March 31, 20X1, were audited by another auditor who expressed an unmodified opinion on those statements on June 30, 20X1.

Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements
[Form and content of this section of the auditor’s report will vary depending on the nature of the auditor’s other reporting responsibilities.]

For XYZ and Co.
Chartered Accountants
Firm’s Registration Number

Signature
(Name of the Member Signing the Audit Report)
(Designation16)
Membership Number

Place of Signature
Date

Example D - Comparative Financial Statements (Ref: Para. A9)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Report illustrative of the circumstances described in paragraph 15, as follows:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Auditor is required to report on both the current period financial statements and the prior period financial statements in connection with the current year’s audit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• The financial reporting framework used in preparing the financial statements is other than accounting principals generally accepted in India. However, the audit is performed in accordance with the Standards on Auditing issued by the Institute of Chartered Accountants of India.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• The auditor’s report on the prior period, as previously issued, included a qualified opinion.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• The matter giving rise to the modification is unresolved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• The effects or possible effects of the matter on the current period’s figures are material to both the current period financial statements and prior period financial statements and require a modification to the auditor’s opinion.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR’S REPORT
To the Members of ABC Company Limited

Report on the Financial Statements17
We have audited the accompanying financial statements of ABC Company Ltd. (“the Company”), which

16 Partner or Proprietor, as the case may be.
17 The sub-title “Report on the Financial Statements” is unnecessary in circumstances when the second sub-title “Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements” is not applicable.
comprise the balance sheets as at March 31, 20X1 and 20X0, and the statements of profit & loss, and cash flow statements for the years then ended, and a summary of significant accounting policies and other explanatory information.

Management’s Responsibility for the Financial Statements

Management is responsible for the preparation and presentation of these financial statements that give a true and fair view of the state of affairs, results of operations and cash flows of the Company in accordance with the Accounting Standards referred to in sub-section (3C) of section 211 of the Companies Act, 1956 (“the Act”). This responsibility includes the design, implementation and maintenance of internal control relevant to the preparation and fair presentation of financial statements that are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error.

Auditor’s Responsibility

Our responsibility is to express an opinion on these financial statements based on our audits. We conducted our audits in accordance with the Standards on Auditing issued by the Institute of Chartered Accountants of India (ICAI). Those Standards require that we comply with ethical requirements and plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free from material misstatement.

An audit involves performing procedures to obtain audit evidence about the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. The procedures selected depend on the auditor's judgment, including the assessment of the risks of material misstatement of the financial statements, whether due to fraud or error. In making those risk assessments, the auditor considers internal control relevant to the entity’s preparation and presentation of the financial statements that give a true and fair view in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the entity’s internal control. An audit also includes evaluating the appropriateness of accounting policies used and the reasonableness of accounting estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the financial statements.

We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained in our audits is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our qualified audit opinion.

Basis for Qualified Opinion

As discussed in Note X to the financial statements, no depreciation has been provided in the financial statements which constitutes a departure from the Accounting Standards referred to in sub-section (3C) of section 211 of the Companies Act, 1956 (“the Act”). Based on the straight-line method of depreciation and annual rates of 5% for the building and 20% for the equipment, the loss for the year should be increased by Rs.XXX in 20X1 and Rs.XXX in 20X0, property, plant and equipment should be reduced by accumulated depreciation of Rs.XXX in 20X1 and Rs.XXX in 20X0, and the accumulated loss should be increased by Rs.XXX in 20X1 and Rs.XXX in 20X0.

Qualified Opinion

In our opinion, except for the effects of the matter described in the Basis for Qualified Opinion paragraph, the financial statements give a true and fair view of the state of affairs of the Company as of March 31, 20X1 and 20X0 and of its results of operations and its cash flows for the years then ended in

---

18 The underlined text has been added pursuant to decision of Council of ICAI taken at its 329th adjourned meeting held in January 2014. The complete text of the Announcement in this regard has been published in Paragraph ‘C’, “Announcements/Clarifications” of Section 1, “Announcements of the Council regarding Status of Various Documents issued by the Institute of Chartered Accountants of India”, included in Volume I.A of the Handbook.
accordance with the Accounting Standards referred to in sub-section (3C) of section 211 of the Companies Act, 1956 ("the Act").

**Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements**

[Form and content of this section of the auditor's report will vary depending on the nature of the auditor's other reporting responsibilities.]

For XYZ and Co.
Chartered Accountants
Firm's Registration Number

Signature
(Name of the Member Signing the Audit Report)
(Designation\(^{19}\))
Membership Number

Place of Signature
Date

\(^{19}\) Partner or Proprietor, as the case may be.
SA 720*

The Auditor’s Responsibility in Relation to Other Information in Documents Containing Audited Financial Statements

(Effective for audits of financial statements for periods beginning on or after April 1, 2010)

Introduction

Scope of this SA

1. This Standard on Auditing (SA) deals with the auditor’s responsibility in relation to other information in documents containing audited financial statements and the auditor’s report thereon. In the absence of any separate requirement in the particular circumstances of the engagement, the auditor’s opinion does not cover other information and the auditor has no specific responsibility for determining whether or not other information is properly stated. However, the auditor reads the other information because the credibility of the audited financial statements may be undermined by material inconsistencies between the audited financial statements and other information. (Ref: Para. A1)

2. In this SA “documents containing audited financial statements” refers to annual reports (or similar documents), that are issued to owners (or similar stakeholders), containing audited financial statements and the auditor’s report thereon. This SA may also be applied, adapted as necessary in the circumstances, to other documents containing audited financial statements. (Ref: Para. A2-A4)

Effective Date

3. This SA is effective for audits of financial statements for periods beginning on or after April 1, 2010.

Objective

4. The objective of the auditor is to respond appropriately when documents containing audited financial statements and the auditor’s report thereon include other information that could undermine the credibility of those financial statements and the auditor’s report.

Definitions

5. For purposes of the SAs the following terms have the meanings attributed below:

(a) Other information – Financial and non-financial information (other than the financial statements and the auditor’s report thereon) which is included, either by law, regulation or custom, in a document containing audited financial statements and the auditor’s report thereon.

(b) Inconsistency – Other information that contradicts information contained in the audited financial statements. A material inconsistency may raise doubt about the audit conclusions drawn from audit evidence previously obtained and, possibly, about the basis for the auditor’s opinion on the financial statements.

(c) Misstatement of fact – Other information that is unrelated to matters appearing in the audited financial

* Published in April, 2009 issue of the Journal.
statements that is incorrectly stated or presented. A material misstatement of fact may undermine the credibility of the document containing audited financial statements.

Requirements

Reading Other Information

6. The auditor shall read the other information to identify material inconsistencies, if any, with the audited financial statements.

7. The auditor shall make appropriate arrangements with management or those charged with governance to obtain the other information prior to the date of the auditor’s report. If it is not possible to obtain all the other information prior to the date of the auditor’s report, the auditor shall read such other information as soon as practicable. (Ref: Para. A5)

Material Inconsistencies

8. If, on reading the other information, the auditor identifies a material inconsistency, the auditor shall determine whether the audited financial statements or the other information needs to be revised.

Material Inconsistencies Identified in Other Information Obtained Prior to the Date of the Auditor’s Report

9. When revision of the audited financial statements is necessary and management refuses to make the revision, the auditor shall modify the opinion in accordance with SA 705.1

10. When revision of the other information is necessary and management refuses to make the revision, the auditor shall communicate this matter to those charged with governance; and

   (a) Include in the auditor’s report an Other Matter(s) paragraph describing the material inconsistency in accordance with SA 7062; or

   (b) Where withdrawal is legally permitted, withdraw from the engagement. (Ref: Para. A6- A7)

Material Inconsistencies Identified in Other Information Obtained Subsequent to the Date of the Auditor’s Report

11. When revision of the audited financial statements is necessary, the auditor shall follow the relevant requirements in SA 560.3

12. When revision of the other information is necessary and management agrees to make the revision, the auditor shall carry out the procedures necessary under the circumstances. (Ref: Para. A8)

13. When revision of the other information is necessary, but management refuses to make the revision, the auditor shall notify those charged with governance of the auditor’s concern regarding the other information and take any further appropriate action. (Ref: Para. A9)

Material Misstatements of Fact

14. If, on reading the other information for the purpose of identifying material inconsistencies, the auditor becomes aware of an apparent material misstatement of fact, the auditor shall discuss the matter with management. (Ref: Para. A10)

15. When, following such discussions, the auditor still considers that there is an apparent material...
misstatement of fact, the auditor shall request management to consult with a qualified third party, such as the entity’s legal counsel, and the auditor shall consider the advice received.

16. When the auditor concludes that there is a material misstatement of fact in the other information which management refuses to correct, the auditor shall notify those charged with governance of the auditor’s concern regarding the other information and take any further appropriate action. *(Ref: Para. A11)*

**Application and Other Explanatory Material**

**Scope of this SA** *(Ref: Para. 1-2)*

A1. The auditor may have additional responsibilities, through statutory or other regulatory requirements, in relation to other information that are beyond the scope of this SA. For example, certain statutory and regulatory requirements may require the auditor to apply specific procedures to certain of the other information such as required supplementary data or to express an opinion on the reliability of performance indicators described in the other information. When there are such obligations, the auditor’s additional responsibilities are determined by the nature of the engagement and by law, regulation and professional standards. If such other information is omitted or contains deficiencies, the auditor may be required by law or regulation to refer to the matter in the auditor’s report.

A2. Other information may comprise, for example:
- A report by management or those charged with governance on operations.
- Financial summaries or highlights.
- Planned capital expenditures.
- Financial ratios.
- Selected quarterly data.

A3. For purposes of the SAs, other information does not encompass, for example:
- A press release or a transmittal memorandum, such as a covering letter, accompanying the document containing audited financial statements and the auditor’s report thereon.
- Information contained in analyst briefings.
- Information contained on the entity’s web site.

**Considerations Specific to Smaller Entities** *(Ref: Para. 2)*

A4. Unless required by law or regulation, smaller entities are less likely to issue documents containing audited financial statements. However, an example of such a document would be where a legal requirement exists for an accompanying report by those charged with governance.

**Reading Other Information** *(Ref: Para. 7)*

A5. Obtaining the other information prior to the date of the auditor’s report enables the auditor to resolve possible material inconsistencies and apparent material misstatements of fact with management on a timely basis. An agreement with management as to when the other information will be available may be helpful.

**Material Inconsistencies**

**Material Inconsistencies Identified in Other Information Obtained Prior to the Date of the Auditor’s Report** *(Ref: Para. 10)*

A6. When management refuses to revise the other information, the auditor may base any decision on what further action to take on advice from the auditor’s legal counsel.

A7. In case of certain entities such as, Central/State governments and related government entities (for
example, agencies, boards, commissions), withdrawal from the engagement may not be an option. In such cases the auditor may issue a report to the appropriate statutory body giving details of the inconsistency.

**Material Inconsistencies Identified in Other Information Obtained Subsequent to the Date of the Auditor’s Report (Ref: Para. 12-13)**

A8. When management agrees to revise the other information, the auditor’s procedures may include reviewing the steps taken by management to ensure that individuals in receipt of the previously issued financial statements, the auditor’s report thereon, and the other information are informed of the revision.

A9. When management refuses to make the revision of such other information that the auditor concludes is necessary, appropriate further actions by the auditor may include obtaining advice from the auditor’s legal counsel.

**Material Misstatements of Fact (Ref: Para. 14-16)**

A10. When discussing an apparent material misstatement of fact with management, the auditor may not be able to evaluate the validity of some disclosures included within the other information and management’s responses to the auditor’s inquiries, and may conclude that valid differences of judgment or opinion exist.

A11. When the auditor concludes that there is a material misstatement of fact that management refuses to correct, appropriate further actions by the auditor may include obtaining advice from the auditor’s legal counsel.

**Material Modifications vis a vis ISA 720, “The Auditor’s Responsibility in Relation to Other Information in Documents Containing Audited Financial Statements”**

**Deletions**

1. Paragraph 10 of ISA 720 dealt with the circumstances where the revision of the financial statements is necessary and management refuses to make the revision. In these circumstances, the auditor shall communicate this matter to those charged with governance and include in the auditor’s report an Other Matter(s) paragraph describing the material inconsistency in accordance with ISA 706; or withhold the auditor’s report; or where withdrawal is legally permitted, withdraw from the engagement. Since in India, the practice of withholding the auditor’s report is not in vogue, an option of withholding the auditor’s report by the auditor has been deleted. Similarly in paragraph A7 of the Application Section, an option of withholding the auditor’s report by the auditor has been deleted.

2. Paragraph A2 of ISA 720 provides the examples of the other information including ‘employment data’ and ‘names of officers and directors’. Reference to these two specific examples has been deleted so that the auditor can focus on more relevant aspects of other information.

3. Paragraph A4 of ISA 720 provides an example of the other information that may be included in a document containing the audited financial statements of a smaller entity are a detailed income statement and a management report. Since, in India, the terminology of “detailed income statement” and a “management report” do not exist; these have been deleted completely from the SA.

4. Paragraph A7 of ISA 720 provides that in case of public sector entities, withdrawal from the engagement or withholding the auditor’s report may not be the options. In such cases the auditor may issue a report to the appropriate statutory body giving details of the inconsistency. Since as mentioned in the “Preface to the Standards on Quality Control, Auditing, Review, Other Assurance and Related Services”, the Standards issued by the Auditing and Assurance Standards Board, apply equally to all entities, irrespective of their form, nature and size, a specific reference to applicability of the Standard to public sector entities has been deleted.

Further, it is also possible that withdrawal from the engagement may not be an option even in case of non public sector entities pursuant to a requirement under the statute or regulation under which they operate. Paragraph A7 has, accordingly, been made more generic in its application.
SA 800*
Special Considerations—Audits of Financial Statements Prepared in Accordance with Special Purpose Frameworks
(Effective for all audits relating to accounting periods beginning on or after April 1, 2011)

Introduction

Scope of this SA
1. The Standards on Auditing (SAs) in the 100-700 series apply to an audit of financial statements. This SA deals with special considerations in the application of those SAs to an audit of financial statements prepared in accordance with a special purpose framework.
2. This SA is written in the context of a complete set of financial statements prepared in accordance with a special purpose framework. SA 805¹, deals with special considerations relevant to an audit of a single financial statement or of a specific element, account or item of a financial statement.
3. This SA does not override the requirements of the other SAs; nor does it purport to deal with all special considerations that may be relevant in the circumstances of the engagement.

Effective Date
4. This SA is effective for audits of financial statements for periods beginning on or after April 1, 2011.

Objective
5. The objective of the auditor, when applying SAs in an audit of financial statements prepared in accordance with a special purpose framework, is to address appropriately the special considerations that are relevant to:
   (a) The acceptance of the engagement;
   (b) The planning and performance of that engagement; and
   (c) Forming an opinion and reporting on the financial statements.

Definitions
6. For purposes of the SAs, the following terms have the meanings attributed below:
   (a) Special purpose financial statements – Financial statements prepared in accordance with a special purpose framework. (Ref: Para. A4)
   (b) Special purpose framework – A financial reporting framework designed to meet the financial information needs of specific users. The financial reporting framework may be a fair presentation

---

* Published in April, 2010 issue of the Journal.
¹ SA 805, “Special Considerations—Audits of Single Financial Statements and Specific Elements, Accounts or Items of a Financial Statement”.

© The Institute of Chartered Accountants of India
7. The related notes ordinarily comprise a summary of significant accounting policies and other explanatory information. The requirements of the applicable financial reporting framework determine the form and content of the financial statements, and what constitutes a complete set of financial statements.

Requirements

Considerations When Accepting the Engagement

Acceptability of the Financial Reporting Framework

8. SA 210 requires the auditor to determine the acceptability of the financial reporting framework applied in the preparation of the financial statements. In an audit of special purpose financial statements, the auditor shall obtain an understanding of:

(a) The purpose for which the financial statements are prepared;

(b) The intended users; and

(c) The steps taken by management to determine that the applicable financial reporting framework is acceptable in the circumstances.

Considerations When Planning and Performing the Audit

9. SA 200 requires the auditor to comply with all SAs relevant to the audit. In planning and performing an audit of special purpose financial statements, the auditor shall determine whether application of the SAs requires special consideration in the circumstances of the engagement.

10. SA 315 requires the auditor to obtain an understanding of the entity's selection and application of accounting policies. In the case of financial statements prepared in accordance with the provisions of a contract, the auditor shall obtain an understanding of any significant interpretations of the contract that management made in the preparation of those financial statements. An interpretation is significant when adoption of another reasonable interpretation would have produced a material difference in the information presented in the financial statements.

Forming an Opinion and Reporting Considerations

11. When forming an opinion and reporting on special purpose financial statements, the auditor shall apply the requirements in SA 700 (Revised).

Description of the Applicable Financial Reporting Framework

12. SA 700 (Revised) requires the auditor to evaluate whether the financial statements adequately refer to or describe the applicable financial reporting framework. In the case of financial statements prepared in accordance with the provisions of a contract, the auditor shall evaluate whether the financial statements adequately describe any significant interpretations of the contract on which the financial statements are based.

13. SA 700 (Revised) deals with the form and content of the auditor’s report. In the case of an auditor’s

---

2 SA 200, “Overall Objectives of the Independent Auditor and the Conduct of an Audit in Accordance with Standards on Auditing”, paragraph 13(a).

3 SA 210, “Agreeing the Terms of Audit Engagements”, paragraph 6 (a).

4 SA 200, paragraph 18.


6 SA 700 (Revised), “Forming an Opinion and Reporting on Financial Statements”.

7 SA 700 (Revised), paragraph 15.
Auditing Pronouncements

report on special purpose financial statements:
(a) The auditor’s report shall also describe the purpose for which the financial statements are prepared and, if necessary, the intended users, or refer to a note in the special purpose financial statements that contains that information; and
(b) If management has a choice of financial reporting frameworks in the preparation of such financial statements, the explanation of management’s responsibility for the financial statements shall also make reference to its responsibility for determining that the applicable financial reporting framework is acceptable in the circumstances.

Alerting Readers that the Financial Statements Are Prepared in Accordance with a Special Purpose Framework

14. The auditor’s report on special purpose financial statements shall include an Emphasis of Matter paragraph alerting users of the auditor’s report that the financial statements are prepared in accordance with a special purpose framework and that, as a result, the financial statements may not be suitable for another purpose. The auditor shall include this paragraph under an appropriate heading. (Ref: Para. A14-A15)

Application and Other Explanatory Material

Special Purpose Frameworks (Ref: Para. 6)

A1. Examples of special purpose frameworks are:
• The cash receipts and disbursements basis of accounting for cash flow information that an entity may be requested to prepare for creditors;
• The financial reporting provisions established by a regulator to meet the requirements of that regulator; or
• The financial reporting provisions of a contract, such as a bond indenture, a loan agreement, or a project grant.

A2. There may be circumstances where a special purpose framework is based on a financial reporting framework established by an authorised or recognised standards setting organization or by law or regulation, but does not comply with all the requirements of that framework. An example is a contract that requires financial statements to be prepared in accordance with most, but not all, of the Financial Reporting Standards of Jurisdiction X. When this is acceptable in the circumstances of the engagement, it is inappropriate for the description of the applicable financial reporting framework in the special purpose financial statements to imply full compliance with the financial reporting framework established by the authorised or recognized standards setting organization or by law or regulation. In the above example of the contract, the description of the applicable financial reporting framework may refer to the financial reporting provisions of the contract, rather than make any reference to the Financial Reporting Standards of Jurisdiction X.

A3. In the circumstances described in paragraph A2, the special purpose framework may not be a fair presentation framework even if the financial reporting framework on which it is based is a fair presentation framework. This is because the special purpose framework may not comply with all the requirements of the financial reporting framework established by the authorized or recognized standards setting organization.

8 In India, financial statements prepared for filing with income tax authorities are considered to be general purpose financial statements. Attention of the readers are also invited to the announcement published in “The Chartered Accountant”, August 1994 (page 224) which states that: “it is hereby clarified that the mandatory accounting standards also apply in respect of financial statements audited under section 44AB of the Income Tax Act, 1961. Accordingly, members should examine compliance with the mandatory accounting standards when conducting such audit”.

© The Institute of Chartered Accountants of India
or by law or regulation that are necessary to achieve fair presentation of the financial statements.

A4. Financial statements prepared in accordance with a special purpose framework may be the only financial statements an entity prepares. In such circumstances, those financial statements may be used by users other than those for whom the financial reporting framework is designed. Despite the broad distribution of the financial statements in those circumstances, the financial statements are still considered to be special purpose financial statements for purposes of the SAs. The requirements in paragraphs 13-14 are designed to avoid misunderstandings about the purpose for which the financial statements are prepared.

Considerations When Accepting the Engagement

Acceptability of the Financial Reporting Framework (Ref: Para. 8)

A5. In the case of special purpose financial statements, the financial information needs of the intended users are a key factor in determining the acceptability of the financial reporting framework applied in the preparation of the financial statements.

A6. The applicable financial reporting framework may encompass the financial reporting standards established by an organization that is authorized or recognized to promulgate standards for special purpose financial statements. In that case, those standards will be presumed acceptable for that purpose if the organization follows an established and transparent process involving deliberation and consideration of the views of relevant stakeholders. Some law(s) or regulation(s) may prescribe the financial reporting framework to be used by management in the preparation of special purpose financial statements for a certain type of entity. For example, a regulator may establish financial reporting provisions to meet the requirements of that regulator. In the absence of indications to the contrary, such a financial reporting framework is presumed acceptable for special purpose financial statements prepared by such entity.

A7. Where the financial reporting standards referred to in paragraph A6 are supplemented by legislative or regulatory requirements, SA 210 requires the auditor to determine whether any conflicts between the financial reporting standards and the additional requirements exist, and prescribes actions to be taken by the auditor if such conflicts exist.9

A8. The applicable financial reporting framework may encompass the financial reporting provisions of a contract, or sources other than those described in paragraphs A6 and A7. In that case, the acceptability of the financial reporting framework in the circumstances of the engagement is determined by considering whether the framework exhibits attributes normally exhibited by acceptable financial reporting frameworks as described in Appendix 2 of SA 210. In the case of a special purpose framework, the relative importance to a particular engagement of each of the attributes normally exhibited by acceptable financial reporting frameworks is a matter of professional judgment. For example, for purposes of establishing the value of net assets of an entity at the date of its sale, the vendor and the purchaser may have agreed that very prudent estimates of allowances for uncollectible accounts receivable are appropriate for their needs, even though such financial information is not neutral when compared with financial information prepared in accordance with a general purpose framework.

Considerations When Planning and Performing the Audit (Ref: Para. 9)

A9. SA 200 requires the auditor to comply with (a) relevant ethical requirements, including those pertaining to independence, relating to financial statement audit engagements, and (b) all SAs relevant to the audit. It also requires the auditor to comply with each requirement of an SA unless, in the circumstances of the audit, the entire SA is not relevant or the requirement is not relevant because it is conditional and the

9 SA 210, paragraph 18.
condition does not exist. In exceptional circumstances, the auditor may judge it necessary to depart from a relevant requirement in an SA by performing alternative audit procedures to achieve the aim of that requirement 10.

A10. Application of some of the requirements of the SAs in an audit of special purpose financial statements may require special consideration by the auditor. For example, in SA 320, judgments about matters that are material to users of the financial statements are based on a consideration of the common financial information needs of users as a group 11. In the case of an audit of special purpose financial statements, however, those judgments are based on a consideration of the financial information needs of the intended users.

A11. In the case of special purpose financial statements, such as those prepared in accordance with the requirements of a contract, management may agree with the intended users on a threshold below which misstatements identified during the audit will not be corrected or otherwise adjusted. The existence of such a threshold does not relieve the auditor from the requirement to determine materiality in accordance with SA 320 for purposes of planning and performing the audit of the special purpose financial statements.

A12. Communication with those charged with governance in accordance with SAs is based on the relationship between those charged with governance and the financial statements subject to audit, in particular, whether those charged with governance are responsible for overseeing the preparation of those financial statements. In the case of special purpose financial statements, those charged with governance may not have such a responsibility; for example, when the financial information is prepared solely for management's use. In such cases, the requirements of SA 260 12 may not be relevant to the audit of the special purpose financial statements, except when the auditor is also responsible for the audit of the entity's general purpose financial statements or, for example, has agreed with those charged with governance of the entity to communicate to them relevant matters identified during the audit of the special purpose financial statements.

Forming an Opinion and Reporting Considerations (Ref: Para. 11)

A13. The Appendix to this SA contains illustrations of auditors' reports on special purpose financial statements.

Alerting Readers that the Financial Statements Are Prepared in Accordance with a Special Purpose Framework (Ref: Para. 14)

A14. The special purpose financial statements may be used for purposes other than those for which they were intended. For example, a regulator may require certain entities to place the special purpose financial statements on public record. To avoid misunderstandings, the auditor alerts users of the auditor's report that the financial statements are prepared in accordance with a special purpose framework and, therefore, may not be suitable for another purpose.

Restriction on Distribution or Use (Ref: Para. 14)

A15. In addition to the alert required by paragraph 14, the auditor may consider it appropriate to indicate that the auditor's report is intended solely for the specific users. Depending on the law or regulation of the particular jurisdiction, this may be achieved by restricting the distribution or use of the auditor's report. In these circumstances, the paragraph referred to in paragraph 14 may be expanded to include these other matters, and the heading modified accordingly.

10 SA 200, paragraphs 14, 18 and 22-23.
11 SA 320, “Materiality in Planning and Performing an Audit”, paragraph 2.
12 SA 260, “Communication with Those Charged with Governance”.
Part I: Engagement and Quality Control Standards

Modifications vis-a-vis ISA 800, “Special Considerations—Audits of Financial Statements Prepared in Accordance with Special Purpose Frameworks”

Deletion

Paragraph A1 of ISA 800 deals with the examples of special purpose frameworks, which also includes a tax basis of accounting for a set of financial statements that accompany an entity’s tax return. Since in India, financial statements prepared for filing with income tax authorities are considered to be general purpose financial statements and as per the announcement issued under the authority of the Council of the Institute of Chartered Accountants of India (ICAI) in August, 1994, the mandatory accounting standards should also be applied in respect of financial statements audited under section 44AB of the Income Tax Act, 1961, an example, “A tax basis of accounting for a set of financial statements that accompany an entity’s tax return” has been deleted.

Appendix

(Ref: Para. A13)

Illustrations of Auditors’ Reports on Special Purpose Financial Statements

Illustration 1: An auditor’s report on a complete set of financial statements prepared in accordance with the financial reporting provisions of a contract (for purposes of this illustration, a compliance framework).

Illustration 2: An auditor’s report on a complete set of financial statements prepared in accordance with the financial reporting provisions established by a regulator (for purposes of this illustration, a fair presentation framework).

Illustration 1:

Circumstances include the following:

- The financial statements have been prepared by management of the entity in accordance with the financial reporting provisions of a contract (i.e., a special purpose framework) to comply with the provisions of that contract. Management does not have a choice of financial reporting frameworks.
- The applicable financial reporting framework is a compliance framework.
- The terms of the audit engagement reflect the description of management’s responsibility for the financial statements in SA 210.
- Distribution and use of the auditor’s report are restricted.

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR’S REPORT

[Appropriate Addressee]

We have audited the accompanying financial statements of ABC Company Ltd., which comprise the balance sheet as at March 31, 20X1, and the statement of profit and loss, and cash flow statement for the year then ended, and a summary of significant accounting policies and other explanatory information. The financial statements have been prepared by management of ABC Company Ltd. based on the financial reporting provisions of section/ clause Z of the contract dated July 1, 20X0 between ABC Company Ltd. and DEF Company Ltd. (“the contract”).

Management’s Responsibility for the Financial Statements

Management is responsible for the preparation of these financial statements in accordance with the financial reporting provisions of section/ clause Z of the contract; this includes the design, implementation and maintenance of internal control relevant to the preparation of financial statements that are free from
material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error.

**Auditor’s Responsibility**

Our responsibility is to express an opinion on these financial statements based on our audit. We conducted our audit in accordance with the Standards on Auditing issued by the Institute of Chartered Accountants of India (ICAI). Those Standards require that we comply with ethical requirements and plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free from material misstatement.

An audit involves performing procedures to obtain audit evidence about the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. The procedures selected depend on the auditor’s judgment, including the assessment of the risks of material misstatement of the financial statements, whether due to fraud or error. In making those risk assessments, the auditor considers internal control relevant to the entity’s preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the entity’s internal control. An audit also includes evaluating the appropriateness of accounting policies used and the reasonableness of accounting estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the financial statements.

We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our audit opinion.

**Opinion**

In our opinion, the financial statements of ABC Company Ltd. for the year ended March 31, 20X1 are prepared, in all material respects, in accordance with the financial reporting provisions of section/ clause Z of the contract.

**Basis of Accounting and Restriction on Distribution and Use**

Without modifying our opinion, we draw attention to Note X to the financial statements, which describes the basis of accounting. The financial statements are prepared to assist ABC Company Ltd. to comply with the financial reporting provisions of the contract referred to above. As a result, the financial statements may not be suitable for another purpose. Our report is intended solely for ABC Company Ltd. and DEF Company Ltd. and should not be distributed to or used by parties other than ABC Company Ltd. or DEF Company Ltd.

For XYZ and Co.
Chartered Accountants
Firm’s Registration Number

Signature
(Name of the Member Signing the Audit Report)
(Designation)
Membership Number

Place of Signature
Date

---

13 The underlined text has been added pursuant to decision of Council of ICAI taken at its 329th adjourned meeting held in January 2014. The complete text of the Announcement in this regard has been published in Paragraph “C”, “Announcements/Clarifications” of Section 1, “Announcements of the Council regarding Status of Various Documents issued by the Institute of Chartered Accountants of India”, included in Volume I.A of the Handbook.

14 Partner or Proprietor, as the case may be.
Illustration 2:
Circumstances include the following:

- The financial statements have been prepared by management of the entity in accordance with the financial reporting provisions established by a regulator (i.e., a special purpose framework) to meet the requirements of that regulator. Management does not have a choice of financial reporting frameworks.
- The applicable financial reporting framework is a fair presentation framework.
- The terms of the audit engagement reflect the description of management’s responsibility for the financial statements in SA 210.
- Distribution or use of the auditor's report is not restricted.
- The Other Matter paragraph refers to the fact that the auditor has also issued an auditor’s report on financial statements prepared by ABC Company Ltd. for the same period in accordance with a general purpose framework.

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR’S REPORT
[Appropriate Addressee]

We have audited the accompanying financial statements of ABC Company Ltd., which comprise the balance sheet as at March 31, 20X1, and the statement of profit and loss, and cash flow statement for the year then ended, and a summary of significant accounting policies and other explanatory information. The financial statements have been prepared by management based on the financial reporting provisions of Section Y of Regulation Z.

Management’s Responsibility for the Financial Statements

Management is responsible for the preparation of these financial statements that give a true and fair view of the state of affairs, results of operations and cash flows of the Company in accordance with the financial reporting provisions of Section Y of Regulation Z; this includes the design, implementation and maintenance of internal control relevant to the preparation and presentation of the financial statements that give a true and fair view and are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error.

Auditor’s Responsibility

Our responsibility is to express an opinion on these financial statements based on our audit. We conducted our audit in accordance with Standards on Auditing issued by the Institute of Chartered Accountants of India (ICAI). Those Standards require that we comply with ethical requirements and plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free from material misstatement.

An audit involves performing procedures to obtain audit evidence about the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. The procedures selected depend on the auditor’s judgment, including the assessment of the risks of material misstatement of the financial statements, whether due to fraud or error. In making those risk assessments, the auditor considers internal control relevant to the entity’s preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the entity’s internal control. An audit also includes evaluating the appropriateness of accounting policies used and the reasonableness of accounting estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall...
We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our audit opinion.

Opinion

In our opinion and to the best of our information and according to the explanations given to us, the financial statements give a true and fair view of the state of affairs of ABC Company Ltd. as at March 31, 20X1, and of its results of operations and its cash flows for the year then ended in accordance with the financial reporting provisions of Section Y of Regulation Z.

Basis of Accounting

Without modifying our opinion, we draw attention to Note X to the financial statements, which describes the basis of accounting. The financial statements are prepared to assist ABC Company Ltd. to meet the requirements of Regulator DEF. As a result, the financial statements may not be suitable for another purpose.

Other Matter

ABC Company Ltd. has prepared a separate set of financial statements for the year ended March 31, 20X1 in accordance with the Accounting Standards referred to in sub-section (3C) of section 211 of the Companies Act, 1956 ("the Act") on which we issued a separate auditor's report to the shareholders of ABC Company Ltd. dated June 30, 20X1.
SA 805*
Special Considerations—Audits of Single Financial Statements and Specific Elements, Accounts or Items of a Financial Statement
(Effective for all audits relating to accounting periods beginning on or after April 1, 2011)

Introduction

Scope of this SA

1. The Standards on Auditing (SAs) in the 100-700 series apply to an audit of financial statements and are to be adapted as necessary in the circumstances when applied to audits of other historical financial information. This SA deals with special considerations in the application of those SAs to an audit of a single financial statement or of a specific element, account or item of a financial statement. The single financial statement or the specific element, account or item of a financial statement may be prepared in accordance with a general or special purpose framework. If prepared in accordance with a special purpose framework, SA 8001 also applies to the audit. (Ref: Para. A1-A4)

2. This SA does not apply to the report of a component auditor, issued as a result of work performed on the financial information of a component at the request of a group engagement team for purposes of an audit of group financial statements (see Proposed Revised SA 6002).

3. This SA does not override the requirements of the other SAs; nor does it purport to deal with all special considerations that may be relevant in the circumstances of the engagement.

Effective Date

4. This SA is effective for audits of single financial statements or of specific elements, accounts or items for periods beginning on or after April 1, 2011. In the case of audits of single financial statements or of specific elements, accounts or items of a financial statement prepared as at a specific date, this SA is effective for audits of such information prepared as at a date on or after April 1, 2011.

Objective

5. The objective of the auditor, when applying SAs in an audit of a single financial statement or of a specific element, account or item of a financial statement, is to address appropriately the special considerations that are relevant to:

(a) The acceptance of the engagement;
(b) The planning and performance of that engagement; and

* Published in the April, 2010 issue of the Journal.
1 SA 800, “Special Considerations—Audits of Financial Statements Prepared in Accordance with Special Purpose Frameworks”.
2 Currently, SA 600, ‘Using the Work of Another Auditor’ is in force. The standard is being revised in light of the corresponding international standard.
I.576 Auditing Pronouncements

(c) Forming an opinion and reporting on the single financial statement or on the specific element, account or item of a financial statement.

Definitions

6. For purposes of this SA, reference to:
   (a) “Element of a financial statement” or “element” means an “element, account or item of a financial statement”;
   (b) “Financial Reporting Standards” means the Accounting Standards issued by the Institute of Chartered Accountants of India (ICAI) or Accounting Standards, notified by the Central Government by publishing the same as the Companies (Accounting Standards) Rules, 2006, or the Accounting Standards for Local Bodies issued by the Institute of Chartered Accountants of India, as may be applicable; and
   (c) A single financial statement (for example, a cash flow statement) or to a specific element of a financial statement (for example, cash and bank balances) includes the related notes. The related notes ordinarily comprise a summary of significant accounting policies and other explanatory information relevant to the financial statement or to the element.

Requirements

Considerations When Accepting the Engagement

Application of SAs

7. SA 200 requires the auditor to comply with all SAs relevant to the audit. In the case of an audit of a single financial statement or of a specific element of a financial statement, this requirement applies irrespective of whether the auditor is also engaged to audit the entity’s complete set of financial statements. If the auditor is not also engaged to audit the entity’s complete set of financial statements, the auditor shall determine whether the audit of a single financial statement or of a specific element of those financial statements in accordance with SAs is practicable. (Ref: Para. A5-A6)

Acceptability of the Financial Reporting Framework

8. SA 210 requires the auditor to determine the acceptability of the financial reporting framework applied in the preparation of the financial statements. In the case of an audit of a single financial statement or of a specific element of a financial statement, this shall include whether application of the financial reporting framework will result in a presentation that provides adequate disclosures to enable the intended users to understand the information conveyed in the financial statement or the element, and the effect of material transactions and events on the information conveyed in the financial statement or the element. (Ref: Para. A7)

Form of Opinion

9. SA 210 requires that the agreed terms of the audit engagement include the expected form of any reports to be issued by the auditor. In the case of an audit of a single financial statement or of a specific element of a financial statement, the auditor shall consider whether the expected form of opinion is appropriate in the circumstances. (Ref: Para. A8-A9)

---

4 SA 210, “Agreeing the Terms of Audit Engagements”, paragraph 6(a).
5 SA 210, paragraph 10(e).
Part I: Engagement and Quality Control Standards

Considerations When Planning and Performing the Audit

10. SA 200 states that SAs are written in the context of an audit of financial statements; they are to be adapted as necessary in the circumstances when applied to audits of other historical financial information.\(^6\)\(^7\) In planning and performing the audit of a single financial statement or of a specific element of a financial statement, the auditor shall adapt all SAs relevant to the audit as necessary in the circumstances of the engagement. (Ref: Para. A10-A14)

Forming an Opinion and Reporting Considerations

11. When forming an opinion and reporting on a single financial statement or on a specific element of a financial statement, the auditor shall apply the requirements in SA 700 (Revised)\(^8\), adapted as necessary in the circumstances of the engagement. (Ref: Para. A15-A16)

Reporting on the Entity’s Complete Set of Financial Statements and on a Single Financial Statement or on a Specific Element of Those Financial Statements

12. If the audit or undertakes an engagement to report on a single financial statement or on a specific element of a financial statement in conjunction with an engagement to audit the entity’s complete set of financial statements, the auditor shall express a separate opinion for each engagement.

13. An audited single financial statement or an audited specific element of a financial statement may be published together with the entity’s audited complete set of financial statements. If the auditor concludes that the presentation of the single financial statement or of the specific element of a financial statement does not differentiate it sufficiently from the complete set of financial statements, the auditor shall ask management to rectify the situation. Subject to paragraphs 15 and 16, the auditor shall also differentiate the opinion on the single financial statement or on the specific element of a financial statement from the opinion on the complete set of financial statements. The auditor shall not issue the auditor’s report containing the opinion on the single financial statement or on the specific element of a financial statement until satisfied with the differentiation.

Modified Opinion, Emphasis of Matter Paragraph or Other Matter Paragraph in the Auditor’s Report on the Entity’s Complete Set of Financial Statements

14. If the opinion in the auditor’s report on an entity’s complete set of financial statements is modified, or that report includes an Emphasis of Matter paragraph or an Other Matter paragraph, the auditor shall determine the effect that this may have on the auditor’s report on a single financial statement or on a specific element of those financial statements. When deemed appropriate, the auditor shall modify the opinion on the single financial statement or on the specific element of a financial statement, or include an Emphasis of Matter paragraph or an Other Matter paragraph in the auditor’s report, accordingly. (Ref: Para. A17)

15. If the auditor concludes that it is necessary to express an adverse opinion or disclaim an opinion on the entity’s complete set of financial statements as a whole, SA 705 does not permit the auditor to include in the same auditor’s report an unmodified opinion on a single financial statement that forms part of those financial statements or on a specific element that forms part of those financial statements.\(^9\) This is because such an unmodified opinion would contradict the adverse opinion or disclaimer of opinion on the entity’s complete set of financial statements as a whole. (Ref: Para. A18)

16. If the auditor concludes that it is necessary to express an adverse opinion or disclaim an opinion on the

---

\(^6\) SA 200, paragraph 2.

\(^7\) SA 200, paragraph 13(f), explains that the term “financial statements” ordinarily refers to a complete set of financial statements as determined by the requirements of the applicable financial reporting framework.

\(^8\) SA 700 (Revised), “Forming an Opinion and Reporting on Financial Statements”.

entity's complete set of financial statements as a whole but, in the context of a separate audit of a specific element that is included in those financial statements, the auditor nevertheless considers it appropriate to express an unmodified opinion on that element, the auditor shall only do so if:

(a) The auditor is not prohibited by law or regulation from doing so;
(b) That opinion is expressed in an auditor's report that is not published together with the auditor's report containing the adverse opinion or disclaimer of opinion; and
(c) The specific element does not constitute a major portion of the entity's complete set of financial statements.

17. The auditor shall not express an unmodified opinion on a single financial statement of a complete set of financial statements if the auditor has expressed an adverse opinion or disclaimed an opinion on the complete set of financial statements as a whole. This is the case even if the auditor’s report on the single financial statement is not published together with the auditor's report containing the adverse opinion or disclaimer of opinion. This is because a single financial statement is deemed to constitute a major portion of those financial statements.

Application and Other Explanatory Material

Scope of this SA (Ref: Para. 1)

A1. SA 200 defines the term “historical financial information” as information expressed in financial terms in relation to a particular entity, derived primarily from that entity’s accounting system, about economic events occurring in past time periods or about economic conditions or circumstances at points in time in the past\(^\text{10}\).

A2. SA 200 defines the term “financial statements” as a structured representation of historical financial information, including related notes, intended to communicate an entity’s economic resources or obligations at a point in time or the changes therein for a period of time in accordance with a financial reporting framework. The term ordinarily refers to a complete set of financial statements as determined by the requirements of the applicable financial reporting framework\(^\text{11}\).

A3. SAs are written in the context of an audit of financial statements\(^\text{12}\); they are to be adapted as necessary in the circumstances when applied to an audit of other historical financial information, such as a single financial statement or a specific element of a financial statement. This SA assists in this regard. (Appendix 1 lists examples of such other historical financial information.)

A4. A reasonable assurance engagement other than an audit of historical financial information is performed in accordance with Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements (SAE) 3000\(^\text{13}\).

Considerations When Accepting the Engagement

Application of SAs (Ref: Para. 7)

A5. SA 200 requires the auditor to comply with (a) relevant ethical requirements, including those pertaining to independence, relating to financial statement audit engagements, and (b) all SAs relevant to the audit. It also requires the auditor to comply with each requirement of an SA unless, in the circumstances of the audit, the entire SA is not relevant or the requirement is not relevant because it is conditional and the condition does not exist. In exceptional circumstances, the auditor may judge it necessary to depart from a relevant

\(^{10}\) SA 200, paragraph 13(g).
\(^{11}\) SA 200, paragraph 13(f).
\(^{12}\) SA 200, paragraph 2.
\(^{13}\) The Exposure Draft of SAE 3000, “Assurance Engagements Other than Audits or Reviews of Historical Financial Information” has been published in the March, 2010 issue of the Journal.
requirement in an SA by performing alternative audit procedures to achieve the aim of that requirement.\(^\text{14}\)

A6. Compliance with the requirements of SAs relevant to the audit of a single financial statement or of a specific element of a financial statement may not be practicable when the auditor is not also engaged to audit the entity’s complete set of financial statements. In such cases, the auditor often does not have the same understanding of the entity and its environment, including its internal control, as an auditor who also audits the entity’s complete set of financial statements. The auditor also does not have the audit evidence about the general quality of the accounting records or other accounting information that would be acquired in an audit of the entity’s complete set of financial statements. Accordingly, the auditor may need further evidence to corroborate audit evidence acquired from the accounting records. In the case of an audit of a specific element of a financial statement, certain SAs require audit work that may be disproportionate to the element being audited. For example, although the requirements of SA 570\(^\text{15}\) are likely to be relevant in the circumstances of an audit of a schedule of accounts receivable, complying with those requirements may not be practicable because of the audit effort required. If the auditor concludes that an audit of a single financial statement or of a specific element of a financial statement in accordance with SAs may not be practicable, the auditor may discuss with management whether another type of engagement might be more practicable.

**Acceptability of the Financial Reporting Framework** (Ref: Para. 8)

A7. A single financial statement or a specific element of a financial statement may be prepared in accordance with an applicable financial reporting framework that is based on a financial reporting framework established by an authorised or recognised standards setting organisation for the preparation of a complete set of financial statements (e.g., Financial Reporting Standards). If this is the case, determination of the acceptability of the applicable framework may involve considering whether that framework includes all the requirements of the framework on which it is based that are relevant to the presentation of a single financial statement or of a specific element of a financial statement that provides adequate disclosures.

**Form of Opinion** (Ref: Para. 9)

A8. The form of opinion to be expressed by the auditor depends on the applicable financial reporting framework and any applicable laws or regulations\(^\text{16}\). In accordance with SA 700 (Revised)\(^\text{17}\):

(a) When expressing an unmodified opinion on a complete set of financial statements prepared in accordance with a fair presentation framework, the auditor’s opinion, unless otherwise required by law or regulation, uses one of the following phrases: (i) the financial statements present fairly, in all material respects, in accordance with [the applicable financial reporting framework]; or (ii) the financial statements give a true and fair view in accordance with [the applicable financial reporting framework]; and

(b) When expressing an unmodified opinion on a complete set of financial statements prepared in accordance with a compliance framework, the auditor’s opinion states that the financial statements are prepared, in all material respects, in accordance with [the applicable financial reporting framework].

A9. In the case of a single financial statement or of a specific element of a financial statement, the applicable financial reporting framework may not explicitly address the presentation of the financial statement or of the element. This may be the case when the applicable financial reporting framework is based on a financial reporting framework established by an authorised or recognised standards setting organization for the preparation of a complete set of financial statements (e.g., Financial Reporting Standards). The auditor

---

\(^{14}\) SA 200, paragraphs 14, 18 and 22-23.

\(^{15}\) SA 570, “Going Concern”.

\(^{16}\) SA 200, paragraph 8.

\(^{17}\) SA 700 (Revised), paragraphs 35-36.
therefore considers whether the expected form of opinion is appropriate in the light of the applicable financial reporting framework. Factors that may affect the auditor’s consideration as to whether to use the phrases “presents fairly, in all material respects”, or “gives a true and fair view” in the auditor’s opinion include:

- Whether the applicable financial reporting framework is explicitly or implicitly restricted to the preparation of a complete set of financial statements.
- Whether the single financial statement or the specific element of a financial statement will:
  - Comply fully with each of those requirements of the framework relevant to the particular financial statement or the particular element, and the presentation of the financial statement or the element include the related notes.
  - If necessary to achieve fair presentation, provide disclosures beyond those specifically required by the framework or, in exceptional circumstances, depart from a requirement of the framework.

The auditor’s decision as to the expected form of opinion is a matter of professional judgment. It may be affected by whether use of the phrases “presents fairly, in all material respects”, or “gives a true and fair view” in the auditor’s opinion on a single financial statement or on a specific element of a financial statement prepared in accordance with a fair presentation framework is generally accepted in the particular jurisdiction.

Considerations When Planning and Performing the Audit (Ref: Para. 10)

A10. The relevance of each of the SAs requires careful consideration. Even when only a specific element of a financial statement is the subject of the audit, SAs such as SA 240\(^{18}\), SA 550\(^{19}\) and SA 570 are, in principle, relevant. This is because the element could be misstated as a result of fraud, the effect of related party transactions, or the incorrect application of the going concern assumption under the applicable financial reporting framework.

A11. Furthermore, SAs are written in the context of an audit of financial statements; they are to be adapted as necessary in the circumstances when applied to the audit of a single financial statement or of a specific element of a financial statement\(^{20}\). For example, written representations from management about the complete set of financial statements would be replaced by written representations about the presentation of the financial statement or the element in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework.

A12. When auditing a single financial statement or a specific element of a financial statement in conjunction with the audit of the entity’s complete set of financial statements, the auditor may be able to use audit evidence obtained as part of the audit of the entity’s complete set of financial statements in the audit of the financial statement or the element. SAs, however, require the auditor to plan and perform the audit of the financial statement or element to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence on which to base the opinion on the financial statement or on the element.

A13. The individual financial statements that comprise a complete set of financial statements, and many of the elements of those financial statements, including their related notes, are interrelated. Accordingly, when auditing a single financial statement or a specific element of a financial statement, the auditor may not be able to consider the financial statement or the element in isolation. Consequently, the auditor may need to perform procedures in relation to the interrelated items to meet the objective of the audit.

A14. Furthermore, the materiality determined for a single financial statement or for a specific element of a financial statement may be lower than the materiality determined for the entity’s complete set of financial statements; this will affect the nature, timing and extent of the audit procedures and the evaluation of


\(^{19}\) SA 550, “Related Parties”.

\(^{20}\) SA 200, paragraph 2.
Forming an Opinion and Reporting Considerations (Ref: Para. 11, 14)

A15. SA 700 (Revised) requires the auditor, in forming an opinion, to evaluate whether the financial statements provide adequate disclosures to enable the intended users to understand the effect of material transactions and events on the information conveyed in the financial statements. In the case of a single financial statement or of a specific element of a financial statement, it is important that the financial statement or the element, including the related notes, in view of the requirements of the applicable financial reporting framework, provides adequate disclosures to enable the intended users to understand the information conveyed in the financial statement or the element, and the effect of material transactions and events on the information conveyed in the financial statement or the element.

A16. Appendix 2 of this SA contains illustrations of auditors’ reports on a single financial statement and on a specific element of a financial statement.


A17. Even when the modified opinion on the entity’s complete set of financial statements, Emphasis of Matter paragraph or Other Matter paragraph does not relate to the audited financial statement or the audited element, the auditor may still deem it appropriate to refer to the modification in an Other Matter paragraph in an auditor’s report on the financial statement or on the element because the auditor judges it to be relevant to the users’ understanding of the audited financial statement or the audited element or the related auditor’s report (see SA 706).

A18. In the auditor’s report on an entity’s complete set of financial statements, the expression of a disclaimer of opinion regarding the results of operations and cash flows, where relevant, and an unmodified opinion regarding the state of affairs is permitted since the disclaimer of opinion is being issued in respect of the results of operations and cash flows only and not in respect of the financial statements as a whole.

Modifications vis-a-vis ISA 805, “Special Considerations—Audits of Single Financial Statements and Specific Elements, Accounts or Items of a Financial Statement”

Addition

Paragraph 6(b) of ISA 805 defines the meaning of the International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRS). Since in India, financial reporting standards, used for the preparation and presentation of financial statements, can be ‘Accounting Standards issued by the Institute of Chartered Accountants of India or Accounting Standards, notified by the Central Government by publishing the same as Companies (Accounting Standards) Rules, 2006’ or ‘Accounting Standards for Local Bodies issued by the Institute of Chartered Accountants of India (ICAI)’, the paragraph 6(b) has, accordingly, been changed. Corresponding changes have also been made at the relevant places of the Standard.

---

21  SA 700 (Revised), paragraph 13(e).
Examples of Specific Elements, Accounts or Items of a Financial Statement

- Accounts receivable, allowance for doubtful accounts receivable, inventory, the liability for accrued benefits of a private pension plan, the recorded value of identified intangible assets, or the liability for “incurred but not reported” claims in an insurance portfolio, including related notes.
- A schedule of externally managed assets and income of a private pension plan, including related notes.
- A schedule of net tangible assets, including related notes.
- A schedule of disbursements in relation to a lease property, including explanatory notes.
- A schedule of profit participation or employee bonuses, including explanatory notes.

Illustrations of Auditors’ Reports on a Single Financial Statement and on a Specific Element of a Financial Statement

- Illustration 1: An auditor’s report on a single financial statement prepared in accordance with a general purpose framework (for purposes of this illustration, a fair presentation framework).
- Illustration 2: An auditor’s report on a single financial statement prepared in accordance with a special purpose framework (for purposes of this illustration, a fair presentation framework).
- Illustration 3: An auditor’s report on a specific element, account or item of a financial statement prepared in accordance with a special purpose framework (for purposes of this illustration, a compliance framework).

Illustration 1:

Circumstances include the following:
- Audit of a balance sheet (i.e., a single financial statement).
- The balance sheet has been prepared by management of the entity in accordance with the requirements of the Accounting Standards referred to in sub-section (3C) of section 211 of the Companies Act, 1956 (“the Act”) relevant to preparing a balance sheet.
- The applicable financial reporting framework is a fair presentation framework designed to meet the common financial information needs of a wide range of users.
- The terms of the audit engagement reflect the description of management’s responsibility for the financial statements in SA 210.
- The auditor has determined that it is appropriate to use the phrase “presents a true and fair view”, in the auditor’s opinion.

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR’S REPORT

[Appropriate Addressee]

We have audited the accompanying balance sheet of ABC Company Ltd. as at March 31, 20X1 and a summary of significant accounting policies and other explanatory information (together “the financial statement”).
Part I: Engagement and Quality Control Standards

Management’s Responsibility for the Financial Statement

Management is responsible for the preparation and fair presentation of this financial statement in accordance with the requirements of the Accounting Standards referred to in sub-section (3C) of section 211 of the Companies Act, 1956 (“the Act”), relevant to preparing such a financial statement. This responsibility includes the design, implementation and maintenance of internal control relevant to the preparation and fair presentation of the financial statement that is free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error.

Auditor’s Responsibility

Our responsibility is to express an opinion on the financial statement based on our audit. We conducted our audit in accordance with the Standards on Auditing issued by the Institute of Chartered Accountants of India (ICAI). Those Standards require that we comply with ethical requirements and plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statement is free from material misstatement.

An audit involves performing procedures to obtain audit evidence about the amounts and disclosures in the financial statement. The procedures selected depend on the auditor’s judgment, including the assessment of the risks of material misstatement of the financial statement, whether due to fraud or error. In making those risk assessments, the auditor considers internal control relevant to the entity’s preparation and fair presentation of the financial statement in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the entity’s internal control. An audit also includes evaluating the appropriateness of accounting policies used and the reasonableness of accounting estimates, if any, made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the financial statement.

We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our audit opinion.

Opinion

In our opinion, the financial statement presents a true and fair view of the state of affairs of ABC Company Ltd. as at March 31, 20X1 in accordance with those requirements of the Accounting Standards referred to in sub-section (3C) of section 211 of the Companies Act, 1956 (“the Act”), relevant to preparing such a financial statement.

For XYZ and Co.
Chartered Accountants
Firm’s Registration Number

Signature
(Name of the Member Signing the Audit Report)
(Designation)
Membership Number

Place of Signature
Date

---

24 Or other term that is appropriate in the context of the legal framework in the particular jurisdiction.

25 The underlined text has been added pursuant to decision of Council of ICAI taken at its 329th adjourned meeting held in January 2014. The complete text of the Announcement in this regard has been published in Paragraph ‘C’, “Announcements/Clarifications” of Section 1, “Announcements of the Council regarding Status of Various Documents issued by the Institute of Chartered Accountants of India”, included in Volume I.A of the Handbook.

26 Partner or Proprietor, as the case may be.
Illustration 2:
Circumstances include the following:
• Audit of a statement of cash receipts and disbursements (i.e., a single financial statement).
• The financial statement has been prepared by management of the entity in accordance with the cash receipts and disbursements basis of accounting to respond to a request for cash flow information received from a creditor. Management has a choice of financial reporting frameworks.
• The applicable financial reporting framework is a fair presentation framework designed to meet the financial information needs of specific users.
• The auditor has determined that it is appropriate to use the phrase “true and fair view” in the auditor’s opinion.
• Distribution or use of the auditor’s report is not restricted.

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR’S REPORT
[Appropriate Addressee]
We have audited the accompanying statement of cash receipts and disbursements of ABC Company Ltd. for the year ended March 31, 20X1 and a summary of significant accounting policies and other explanatory information (together “the financial statement”). The financial statement has been prepared by management using the cash receipts and disbursements basis of accounting described in Note X.

Management’s Responsibility for the Financial Statement
Management is responsible for the preparation and fair presentation of this financial statement in accordance with the cash receipts and disbursements basis of accounting described in Note X; this includes determining that the cash receipts and disbursements basis of accounting is an acceptable basis for the preparation of the financial statement in the circumstances, and the design, implementation and maintenance of internal control relevant to the preparation and fair presentation of the financial statement that is free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error.

Auditor’s Responsibility
Our responsibility is to express an opinion on the financial statement based on our audit. We conducted our audit in accordance with Standards on Auditing issued by the Institute of Chartered Accountants of India (ICAI). Those Standards require that we comply with ethical requirements and plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statement is free from material misstatement.

An audit involves performing procedures to obtain audit evidence about the amounts and disclosures in the financial statement. The procedures selected depend on the auditor’s judgment, including the assessment of the risks of material misstatement of the financial statement, whether due to fraud or error. In making those risk assessments, the auditor considers internal control relevant to the entity’s preparation and fair presentation of the financial statement in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the entity’s internal control. An audit also includes evaluating the appropriateness of accounting policies used and the

27 SA 800 contains requirements and guidance on the form and content of financial statements prepared in accordance with a special purpose framework.
28 Or other term that is appropriate in the context of the legal framework in the particular jurisdiction.
29 The underlined text has been added pursuant to decision of Council of ICAI taken at its 329th adjourned meeting held in January 2014. The complete text of the Announcement in this regard has been published in Paragraph ‘C’, “Announcements/Clarifications” of Section 1, “Announcements of the Council regarding Status of Various Documents issued by the Institute of Chartered Accountants of India”, included in Volume I.A of the Handbook.
Part I: Engagement and Quality Control Standards

reasonableness of accounting estimates, if any, made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the financial statement.
We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our audit opinion.

Opinion
In our opinion, the financial statement presents a true and fair view of the cash receipts and disbursements of ABC Company Ltd. for the year ended March 31, 20X1 in accordance with the cash receipts and disbursements basis of accounting described in Note X.

Basis of Accounting
Without modifying our opinion, we draw attention to Note X to the financial statement, which describes the basis of accounting. The financial statement is prepared to provide information to XYZ Creditor. As a result, the statement may not be suitable for another purpose.

For XYZ and Co.
Chartered Accountants
Firm’s Registration Number

Signature
(Name of the Member Signing the Audit Report)
(Designation30)
Membership Number

Place of Signature
Date

Illustration 3:
Circumstances include the following:
• Audit of the liability for “incurred but not reported” claims in an insurance portfolio (i.e., element, account or item of a financial statement).
• The financial information has been prepared by management of the entity in accordance with the financial reporting provisions established by a regulator to meet the requirements of that regulator. Management does not have a choice of financial reporting frameworks.
• The applicable financial reporting framework is a compliance framework designed to meet the financial information needs of specific users31.
• The terms of the audit engagement reflect the description of management’s responsibility for the financial statements in SA 210.
• Distribution of the auditor’s report is restricted.

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR’S REPORT
[Appropriate Addressee]
We have audited the accompanying schedule of the liability for “incurred but not reported” claims of ABC Insurance Company as of March 31, 20X1 (“the schedule”). The schedule has been prepared by management based on [describe the financial reporting provisions established by the regulator].

30 Partner or Proprietor, as the case may be.
31 SA 800 contains requirements and guidance on the form and content of financial statements prepared in accordance with a special purpose framework.
Management’s Responsibility for the Schedule
Management is responsible for the preparation of the schedule in accordance with [describe the financial reporting provisions established by the regulator]; this includes the design, implementation and maintenance of internal control relevant to the preparation of the schedule that is free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error.

Auditor’s Responsibility
Our responsibility is to express an opinion on the schedule based on our audit. We conducted our audit in accordance with Standards on Auditing issued by the Institute of Chartered Accountants of India (ICAI). Those Standards require that we comply with ethical requirements and plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the schedule is free from material misstatement.

An audit involves performing procedures to obtain audit evidence about the amounts and disclosures in the schedule. The procedures selected depend on the auditor’s judgment, including the assessment of the risks of material misstatement of the schedule, whether due to fraud or error. In making those risk assessments, the auditor considers internal control relevant to the entity’s preparation of the schedule in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the entity’s internal control. An audit also includes evaluating the appropriateness of accounting policies used and the reasonableness of accounting estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the schedule.

We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our audit opinion.

Opinion
In our opinion, the financial information in the schedule of the liability for “incurred but not reported” claims of ABC Insurance Company as of March 31, 20X1 is prepared, in all material respects, in accordance with [describe the financial reporting provisions established by the regulator].

Basis of Accounting and Restriction on Distribution
Without modifying our opinion, we draw attention to Note X to the schedule, which describes the basis of accounting. The schedule is prepared to assist ABC Insurance Company to meet the requirements of Regulator DEF. As a result, the schedule may not be suitable for another purpose. Our report is intended solely for ABC Insurance Company and Regulator DEF and should not be distributed to parties other than ABC Insurance Company or Regulator DEF.

For XYZ and Co.
Chartered Accountants
Firm’s Registration Number

Signature
(Name of the Member Signing the Audit Report)
(Designation)
Membership Number

Place of Signature
Date

© The Institute of Chartered Accountants of India
SA 810*

Engagements to Report on Summary Financial Statements

(Effective for all audits relating to accounting periods beginning on or after April 1, 2011)

Introduction

Scope of this SA
1. This Standard on Auditing (SA) deals with the auditor’s responsibilities when undertaking an engagement to report on summary financial statements derived from financial statements audited in accordance with SAs by that same auditor.

Effective Date
2. This SA is effective for engagements for periods beginning on or after April 1, 2011.

Objectives
3. The objectives of the auditor are to:
   (a) Determine whether it is appropriate to accept the engagement to report on summary financial statements;
   (b) Form an opinion on the summary financial statements based on an evaluation of the conclusions drawn from the evidence obtained; and
   (c) Express clearly that opinion through a written report that also describes the basis for that opinion.

Definitions
4. For purposes of this SA, the following terms have the meanings attributed below:
   (a) Applied criteria – The criteria applied by management in the preparation of the summary financial statements.
   (b) Audited financial statements – Financial statements1 audited by the auditor in accordance with SAs, and from which the summary financial statements are derived.
   (c) Summary financial statements – Historical financial information that is derived from financial statements but that contains less detail than the financial statements, while still providing a structured representation consistent with that provided by the financial statements of the entity’s economic resources or obligations at a point in time or the changes therein for a period of time2. Different jurisdictions may use different terminology to describe such historical financial information.

* Published in April, 2010 issue of the Journal. Pursuant to issuance of SA 810, the ‘Guidance Note on Audit of Abridged Financial Statements’ issued in 1990 has been withdrawn.

1 SA 200, “Overall Objectives of the Independent Auditor and the Conduct of an Audit in Accordance with Standards on Auditing”, paragraph 13(f).
2 SA 200, paragraph 13(f).
Requirements

Engagement Acceptance

5. The auditor shall, ordinarily, accept an engagement to report on summary financial statements in accordance with this SA only when the auditor has been engaged to conduct an audit in accordance with SAs of the financial statements from which the summary financial statements are derived. (Ref: Para. A1)

6. Before accepting an engagement to report on summary financial statements, the auditor shall: (Ref: Para. A2)
   (a) Determine whether the applied criteria are acceptable; (Ref: Para. A3-A7)
   (b) Obtain the agreement of management that it acknowledges and understands its responsibility:
      i. For the preparation of the summary financial statements in accordance with the applied criteria;
      ii. To make the audited financial statements available to the intended users of the summary financial statements without undue difficulty (or, if law or regulation provides that the audited financial statements need not be made available to the intended users of the summary financial statements and establishes the criteria for the preparation of the summary financial statements, to describe that law or regulation in the summary financial statements); and
      iii. To include the auditor’s report on the summary financial statements in any document that contains the summary financial statements and that indicates that the auditor has reported on them.
   (c) Agree with management the form of opinion to be expressed on the summary financial statements (see paragraphs 9-11).

7. If the auditor concludes that the applied criteria are unacceptable or is unable to obtain the agreement of management set out in paragraph 6(b), the auditor shall not accept the engagement to report on the summary financial statements, unless required by law or regulation to do so. An engagement conducted in accordance with such law or regulation does not comply with this SA. Accordingly, the auditor’s report on the summary financial statements shall not indicate that the engagement was conducted in accordance with this SA. The auditor shall include appropriate reference to this fact in the terms of the engagement. The auditor shall also determine the effect that this may have on the engagement to audit the financial statements from which the summary financial statements are derived.

Nature of Procedures

8. The auditor shall perform the following procedures, and any other procedures that the auditor may consider necessary, as the basis for the auditor’s opinion on the summary financial statements:
   (a) Evaluate whether the summary financial statements adequately disclose their summarised nature and identify the audited financial statements.
   (b) When summary financial statements are not accompanied by the audited financial statements, evaluate whether they describe clearly:

---

3 In some cases however the auditor may be required by a law or a regulation governing the entity to report on summary financial statements even for such accounting periods for which the former was not engaged to conduct the audit in accordance with SAs of the financial statements pertaining to such accounting periods. For example, in case of the report of the auditor of the company to be included in a prospectus under Clauses 1, 2, 3 of Part IIB of Schedule II to the Companies Act, 1956, such auditor might not necessarily have been the auditor of all or some of the financial statements of the company in respect of the accounting periods relating to which financial information has been reported upon by him/ her in the aforementioned report.
(i) From whom or where the audited financial statements are available; or

(ii) The law or regulation that specifies that the audited financial statements need not be made available to the intended users of the summary financial statements and establishes the criteria for the preparation of the summary financial statements.

(c) Evaluate whether the summary financial statements adequately disclose the applied criteria.

(d) Compare the summary financial statements with the related information in the audited financial statements to determine whether the summary financial statements agree with or can be re-calculated from the related information in the audited financial statements.

(e) Evaluate whether the summary financial statements are prepared in accordance with the applied criteria.

(f) Evaluate, in view of the purpose of the summary financial statements, whether the summary financial statements contain the information necessary, and are at an appropriate level of aggregation, so as not to be misleading in the circumstances.

(g) Evaluate whether the audited financial statements are available to the intended users of the summary financial statements without undue difficulty, unless law or regulation provides that they need not be made available and establishes the criteria for the preparation of the summary financial statements.

(Ref: Para. A8)

Form of Opinion

9. When the auditor has concluded that an unmodified opinion on the summary financial statements is appropriate, the auditor’s opinion shall, unless otherwise required by law or regulation, use one of the following phrases: (Ref: Para. A9)

(a) The summary financial statements are consistent, in all material respects, with the audited financial statements, in accordance with [the applied criteria]; or

(b) The summary financial statements are a fair summary of the audited financial statements, in accordance with [the applied criteria].

10. If law or regulation prescribes the wording of the opinion on summary financial statements in terms that are different from those described in paragraph 9, the auditor shall:

(a) Apply the procedures described in paragraph 8 and any further procedures necessary to enable the auditor to express the prescribed opinion; and

(b) Evaluate whether users of the summary financial statements might misunderstand the auditor’s opinion on the summary financial statements and, if so, whether additional explanation in the auditor’s report on the summary financial statements can mitigate possible misunderstanding.

11. If, in the case of paragraph 10(b), the auditor concludes that additional explanation in the auditor’s report on the summary financial statements cannot mitigate possible misunderstanding, the auditor shall not accept the engagement, unless required by law or regulation to do so. An engagement conducted in accordance with such law or regulation does not comply with this SA. Accordingly, the auditor’s report on the summary financial statements shall not indicate that the engagement was conducted in accordance with this SA.

Timing of Work and Events Subsequent to the Date of the Auditor’s Report on the Audited Financial Statements

12. The auditor’s report on the summary financial statements may be dated later than the date of the auditor’s report on the audited financial statements. In such cases, the auditor’s report on the summary
I.590 Auditing Pronouncements

financial statements shall state that the summary financial statements and audited financial statements do not reflect the effects of events that occurred subsequent to the date of the auditor’s report on the audited financial statements that may require adjustment of, or disclosure in, the audited financial statements. (Ref: Para. A10)

13. The auditor may become aware of facts that existed at the date of the auditor’s report on the audited financial statements, but of which the auditor previously was unaware. In such cases, the auditor shall not issue the auditor’s report on the summary financial statements until the auditor’s consideration of such facts in relation to the audited financial statements in accordance with SA 560 has been completed.

Auditor’s Report on Summary Financial Statements

Elements of the Auditor’s Report

14. The auditor’s report on summary financial statements shall include the following elements5: (Ref: Para. A15)

(a) A title clearly indicating it as the report of an independent auditor. (Ref: Para. A11)
(b) An addressee. (Ref: Para. A12)
(c) An introductory paragraph that:

(i) Identifies the summary financial statements on which the auditor is reporting, including the title of each statement included in the summary financial statements; (Ref: Para. A13)

(ii) Identifies the audited financial statements;

(iii) Refers to the auditor’s report on the audited financial statements, the date of that report, and, subject to paragraphs 17-18, the fact that an unmodified opinion is expressed on the audited financial statements;

(iv) If the date of the auditor’s report on the summary financial statements is later than the date of the auditor’s report on the audited financial statements, states that the summary financial statements and the audited financial statements do not reflect the effects of events that occurred subsequent to the date of the auditor’s report on the audited financial statements; and

(v) A statement indicating that the summary financial statements do not contain all the disclosures required by the financial reporting framework applied in the preparation of the audited financial statements, and that reading the summary financial statements is not a substitute for reading the audited financial statements.

(d) A description of management’s responsibility for the summary financial statements, explaining that management is responsible for the preparation of the summary financial statements in accordance with the applied criteria.

(e) A statement that the auditor is responsible for expressing an opinion on the summary financial statements based on the procedures required by this SA.

(f) A paragraph clearly expressing an opinion. (see paragraphs 9-11)

(g) The auditor’s signature along with the firm registration number, wherever applicable, and the membership number assigned by the Institute of Chartered Accountants of India (ICAI).

(h) The date of the auditor’s report. (Ref: Para. A14)

4 SA 560, “Subsequent Events”.

5 Paragraphs 17-18, which deal with circumstances where the auditor’s report on the audited financial statements has been modified, require additional elements to those listed in this paragraph.
Part I: Engagement and Quality Control Standards

15. If the addressee of the summary financial statements is not the same as the addressee of the auditor’s report on the audited financial statements, the auditor shall evaluate the appropriateness of using a different addressee. (Ref: Para. A12)

16. The auditor shall date the auditor’s report on the summary financial statements no earlier than: (Ref: Para. A14)

(a) The date on which the auditor has obtained sufficient appropriate evidence on which to base the opinion, including evidence that the summary financial statements have been prepared and those with the recognised authority have asserted that they have taken responsibility for them; and

(b) The date of the auditor’s report on the audited financial statements.


17. When the auditor’s report on the audited financial statements contains a qualified opinion, an Emphasis of Matter paragraph, or an Other Matter paragraph, but the auditor is satisfied that the summary financial statements are consistent, in all material respects, with or are a fair summary of the audited financial statements, in accordance with the applied criteria, the auditor’s report on the summary financial statements shall, in addition to the elements in paragraph 14:

(a) State that the auditor’s report on the audited financial statements contains a qualified opinion, an Emphasis of Matter paragraph, or an Other Matter paragraph; and

(b) Describe:

   (i) The basis for the qualified opinion on the audited financial statements, and that qualified opinion; or the Emphasis of Matter or the Other Matter paragraph in the auditor’s report on the audited financial statements; and

   (ii) The effect thereof on the summary financial statements, if any.

18. When the auditor’s report on the audited financial statements contains an adverse opinion or a disclaimer of opinion, the auditor’s report on the summary financial statements shall, in addition to the elements in paragraph 14:

(a) State that the auditor’s report on the audited financial statements contains an adverse opinion or disclaimer of opinion;

(b) Describe the basis for that adverse opinion or disclaimer of opinion; and

(c) State that, as a result of the adverse opinion or disclaimer of opinion, it is inappropriate to express an opinion on the summary financial statements.

Modified Opinion on the Summary Financial Statements

19. If the summary financial statements are not consistent, in all material respects, with or are not a fair summary of the audited financial statements, in accordance with the applied criteria, and management does not agree to make the necessary changes, the auditor shall express an adverse opinion on the summary financial statements. (Ref: Para. A15)

Restriction on Distribution or Use or Alerting Readers to the Basis of Accounting

20. When distribution or use of the auditor’s report on the audited financial statements is restricted, or the auditor’s report on the audited financial statements alerts readers that the audited financial statements are prepared in accordance with a special purpose framework, the auditor shall include a similar restriction or alert in the auditor’s report on the summary financial statements.
Comparatives

21. If the audited financial statements contain comparatives, but the summary financial statements do not, the auditor shall determine whether such omission is reasonable in the circumstances of the engagement. The auditor shall determine the effect of an unreasonable omission on the auditor’s report on the summary financial statements. (Ref: Para. A16)

22. If the summary financial statements contain comparatives that were reported on by another auditor, the auditor’s report on the summary financial statements shall also contain the matters that SA 710 requires the auditor to include in the auditor’s report on the audited financial statements. (Ref: Para. A17)

Unaudited Supplementary Information Presented with Summary Financial Statements

23. The auditor shall evaluate whether any unaudited supplementary information presented with the summary financial statements is clearly differentiated from the summary financial statements. If the auditor concludes that the entity’s presentation of the unaudited supplementary information is not clearly differentiated from the summary financial statements, the auditor shall ask management to change the presentation of the unaudited supplementary information. If management refuses to do so, the auditor shall explain in the auditor’s report on the summary financial statements that such information is not covered by that report. (Ref: Para. A18)

Other Information in Documents Containing Summary Financial Statements

24. The auditor shall read other information included in a document containing the summary financial statements and related auditor’s report to identify material inconsistencies, if any, with the summary financial statements. If, on reading the other information, the auditor identifies a material inconsistency, the auditor shall determine whether the summary financial statements or the other information needs to be revised. If, on reading the other information, the auditor becomes aware of an apparent material misstatement of fact, the auditor shall discuss the matter with management. (Ref: Para. A19)

Auditor Association

25. If the auditor becomes aware that the entity plans to state that the auditor has reported on summary financial statements in a document containing the summary financial statements, but does not plan to include the related auditor’s report, the auditor shall request management to include the auditor’s report in the document. If management does not do so, the auditor shall determine and carry out other appropriate actions designed to prevent management from inappropriately associating the auditor with the summary financial statements in that document. (Ref: Para. A20)

26. The auditor may be engaged to report on the financial statements of an entity, while not engaged to report on the summary financial statements. If, in this case, the auditor becomes aware that the entity plans to make a statement in a document that refers to the auditor and the fact that summary financial statements are derived from the financial statements audited by the auditor, the auditor shall be satisfied that:

(a) The reference to the auditor is made in the context of the auditor’s report on the audited financial statements; and

(b) The statement does not give the impression that the auditor has reported on the summary financial statements.

If (a) or (b) are not met, the auditor shall request management to change the statement to meet them, or not to refer to the auditor in the document. Alternatively, the entity may engage the auditor to report on the summary financial statements and include the related auditor’s report in the document. If management does not
not change the statement, delete the reference to the auditor, or include an auditor’s report on the summary financial statements in the document containing the summary financial statements, the auditor shall advise management that the auditor disagrees with the reference to the auditor, and the auditor shall determine and carry out other appropriate actions designed to prevent management from inappropriately referring to the auditor. (Ref: Para. A20)

Application and Other Explanatory Material

Engagement Acceptance (Ref: Para. 5-6)

A1. The audit of the financial statements from which the summary financial statements are derived provides the auditor with the necessary knowledge to discharge the auditor’s responsibilities in relation to the summary financial statements in accordance with this SA. Application of this SA will not provide sufficient appropriate evidence on which to base the opinion on the summary financial statements if the auditor has not also audited the financial statements from which the summary financial statements are derived.

A2. Management’s agreement with the matters described in paragraph 6 may be evidenced by its written acceptance of the terms of the engagement.

Criteria (Ref: Para. 6(a))

A3. Management is responsible for the determination of the information that needs to be reflected in the summary financial statements so that they are consistent, in all material respects, with or represent a fair summary of the audited financial statements. Because summary financial statements by their nature contain aggregated information and limited disclosure, there is an increased risk that they may not contain the information necessary so as not to be misleading in the circumstances. This risk increases when established criteria for the preparation of summary financial statements do not exist.

A4. Factors that may affect the auditor’s determination of the acceptability of the applied criteria include:

- The nature of the entity;
- The purpose of the summary financial statements;
- The information needs of the intended users of the summary financial statements; and
- Whether the applied criteria will result in summary financial statements that are not misleading in the circumstances.

A5. The criteria for the preparation of summary financial statements may be established by an authorised or recognised standards setting organisation or by law or regulation. Similar to the case of financial statements, as explained in SA 210, in many such cases, the auditor may presume that such criteria are acceptable.

A6. Where established criteria for the preparation of summary financial statements do not exist, criteria may be developed by management, for example, based on practice in a particular industry. Criteria that are acceptable in the circumstances will result in summary financial statements that:

(a) Adequately disclose their summarised nature and identify the audited financial statements;

(b) Clearly describe from whom or where the audited financial statements are available or, if law or regulation provides that the audited financial statements need not be made available to the intended users of the summary financial statements and establishes the criteria for the preparation of the summary financial statements, that law or regulation;

(c) Adequately disclose the applied criteria;

(d) Agree with or can be re-calculated from the related information in the audited financial statements; and

(e) In view of the purpose of the summary financial statements, contain the information necessary, and are at an appropriate level of aggregation, so as not to be misleading in the circumstances.

A7. Adequate disclosure of the summarised nature of the summary financial statements and the identity of the audited financial statements, as referred to in paragraph A6(a), may, for example, be provided by a title such as “Summary Financial Statements Prepared from the Audited Financial Statements for the Year Ended March 31, 20X1”.

Evaluating the Availability of the Audited Financial Statements (Ref: Para. 8(g))

A8. The auditor’s evaluation whether the audited financial statements are available to the intended users of the summary financial statements without undue difficulty is affected by factors such as whether:

- The summary financial statements describe clearly from whom or where the audited financial statements are available;
- The audited financial statements are on public record; or
- Management has established a process by which the intended users of the summary financial statements can obtain ready access to the audited financial statements.

Form of Opinion (Ref: Para. 9)

A9. A conclusion, based on an evaluation of the evidence obtained by performing the procedures in paragraph 8, that an unmodified opinion on the summary financial statements is appropriate enables the auditor to express an opinion containing one of the phrases in paragraph 9. The auditor’s decision as to which of the phrases to use may be affected by generally accepted practice in the particular jurisdiction.

Timing of Work and Events Subsequent to the Date of the Auditor’s Report on the Audited Financial Statements (Ref: Para. 12)

A10. The procedures described in paragraph 8 are often performed during or immediately after the audit of the financial statements. When the auditor reports on the summary financial statements after the completion of the audit of the financial statements, the auditor is not required to obtain additional audit evidence on the audited financial statements, or report on the effects of events that occurred subsequent to the date of the auditor’s report on the audited financial statements since the summary financial statements are derived from the audited financial statements and do not update them.

Auditor’s Report on Summary Financial Statements

Elements of the Auditor’s Report

Title (Ref: Para. 14(a))

A11. A title indicating the report is the report of an independent auditor, for example, “Report of the Independent Auditor”, affirms that the auditor has met all of the relevant ethical requirements regarding independence. This distinguishes the report of the independent auditor from reports issued by others.

Addresssee (Ref: Para. 14(b), 15)

A12. Factors that may affect the auditor’s evaluation of the appropriateness of the addresssee of the summary financial statements include the terms of the engagement, the nature of the entity, and the purpose of the summary financial statements.

Introductory Paragraph (Ref: Para. 14(c)(i))

A13. When the auditor is aware that the summary financial statements will be included in a document that contains other information, the auditor may consider, if the form of presentation allows, identifying the page numbers on which the summary financial statements are presented. This helps readers to identify the
Part I: Engagement and Quality Control Standards

summary financial statements to which the auditor’s report relates.

Date of the Auditor’s Report (Ref: Para. 14(h), 16)

A14. The person or persons with recognised authority to conclude that the summary financial statements have been prepared and take responsibility for them depend on the terms of the engagement, the nature of the entity, and the purpose of the summary financial statements.

Illustrations (Ref: Para.14, 17-18, 19)

A15. The Appendix to this SA contains illustrations of auditors’ reports on summary financial statements that:
(a) Contain unmodified opinions;
(b) Are derived from audited financial statements on which the auditor issued modified opinions; and
(c) Contain a modified opinion.

Comparatives (Ref: Para. 21-22)

A16. If the audited financial statements contain comparatives, there is a presumption that the summary financial statements also would contain comparatives. Comparatives in the audited financial statements may be regarded as corresponding figures or as comparative financial information. SA 710 describes how this difference affects the auditor’s report on the financial statements, including, in particular, reference to other auditors who audited the financial statements for the prior period.

A17. Circumstances that may affect the auditor’s determination whether an omission of comparatives is reasonable include the nature and objective of the summary financial statements, the applied criteria, and the information needs of the intended users of the summary financial statements.

Unaudited Supplementary Information Presented with Summary Financial Statements (Ref: Para. 23)

A18. SA 700 (Revised)\(^8\) contains requirements and guidance to be applied when unaudited supplementary information is presented with audited financial statements that, adapted as necessary in the circumstances, may be helpful in applying the requirement in paragraph 23.

Other Information in Documents Containing Summary Financial Statements (Ref: Para. 24)

A19. SA 720\(^9\) contains requirements and guidance relating to reading other information included in a document containing the audited financial statements and related auditor’s report, and responding to material inconsistencies and material misstatements of fact. Adapted as necessary in the circumstances, they may be helpful in applying the requirement in paragraph 24.

Auditor Association (Ref: Para. 25-26)

A20. Other appropriate actions the auditor may take when management does not take the requested action may include informing the intended users and other known third-party users of the inappropriate reference to the auditor. The auditor’s course of action depends on the auditor’s legal rights and obligations. Consequently, the auditor may consider it appropriate to seek legal advice.

Material Modifications vis-a-vis ISA 810, “Engagements to Report on Summary Financial Statements”

Additions

1. Paragraph 5 of ISA 810 requires the auditor to accept an engagement to report on summary financial statements in accordance with this SA only when the auditor has been engaged to conduct an audit in

\(^8\) SA 700 (Revised), “Forming an Opinion and Reporting on Financial Statements”, paragraphs 46-47.

\(^9\) SA 720, “The Auditor’s Responsibility in Relation to Other Information in Documents Containing Audited Financial Statements”.
accordance with SAs of the financial statements from which the summary financial statements are derived. In India, in some cases, the auditor may be required by a law or a regulation governing the entity to report on summary financial statements even for such accounting periods for which the former was not engaged to conduct the audit in accordance with SAs of the financial statements pertaining to such accounting periods. For example, in case of the report of the auditor of the company to be included in a prospectus under Clauses 1, 2, 3 of Part IIB of Schedule II to the Companies Act, 1956, such auditor might not necessarily have been the auditor of all or some of the financial statements of the company in respect of the accounting periods relating to which financial information has been reported upon by him/ her in the aforementioned report, accordingly, the word “ordinarily” has been added in the Paragraph 5 to cover these situations and also added the correspondingly footnote no. 5.

2. Paragraph 14 of ISA 810 deals with the elements of the summary financial statements that also include the auditor’s address. Since the Revised SA 700, “Forming an Opinion and Reporting on Financial Statements” requires the auditor to mention the “Place of Signature” instead of the “Auditor’s Address” in the auditor’s report, the requirement of mentioning the auditor’s address has been replaced with the place of signature.

3. Paragraph 14 of ISA 810 deals with the elements of the summary financial statements that also include auditor’s signature. Since as per the Revised SA 700, “Forming an Opinion and Reporting on Financial Statements”, the partner/proprietor signing the audit report also needs to mention the firm registration number, wherever applicable, and the membership number assigned by the Institute of Chartered Accountants of India, the said requirement has also been incorporated in the paragraph 14(g) of SA 810.

Illustrations of Reports on Summary Financial Statements

- Illustration 1: An auditor’s report on summary financial statements prepared in accordance with established criteria. An unmodified opinion is expressed on the audited financial statements. The auditor’s report on the summary financial statements is dated later than the date of the auditor’s report on the financial statements from which summary financial statements are derived.

- Illustration 2: An auditor’s report on summary financial statements prepared in accordance with criteria developed by management and adequately disclosed in the summary financial statements. The auditor has determined that the applied criteria are acceptable in the circumstances. An unmodified opinion is expressed on the audited financial statements.

- Illustration 3: An auditor’s report on summary financial statements prepared in accordance with criteria developed by management and adequately disclosed in the summary financial statements. The auditor has determined that the applied criteria are acceptable in the circumstances. A qualified opinion is expressed on the audited financial statements.

- Illustration 4: An auditor’s report on summary financial statements prepared in accordance with criteria developed by management and adequately disclosed in the summary financial statements. The auditor has determined that the applied criteria are acceptable in the circumstances. An adverse opinion is expressed on the audited financial statements.

- Illustration 5: An auditor’s report on summary financial statements prepared in accordance with established criteria. An unmodified opinion is expressed on the audited financial statements. The auditor concludes that it is not possible to express an unmodified opinion on the summary financial statements.
Part I: Engagement and Quality Control Standards

Illustration 1:
Circumstances include the following:
- An unmodified opinion is expressed on the audited financial statements.
- Established criteria for the preparation of summary financial statements exist.
- The auditor’s report on the summary financial statements is dated later than the date of the auditor’s report on the financial statements from which the summary financial statements are derived.

REPORT OF THE INDEPENDENT AUDITOR ON THE SUMMARY FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

[Appropriate Addressee]

The accompanying summary financial statements, which comprise the summary balance sheet as at March 31, 20X1, the summary statement of profit & loss, and summary cash flow statement for the year then ended, and related notes, are derived from the audited financial statements of ABC Company Ltd. for the year ended March 31, 20X1. We expressed an unmodified audit opinion on those financial statements in our report dated May 15, 20X1. Those financial statements, and the summary financial statements, do not reflect the effects of events that occurred subsequent to the date of our report on those financial statements.

The summary financial statements do not contain all the disclosures required by the Accounting Standards referred to in sub-section (3C) of section 211 of the Companies Act, 1956 (“the Act”) [applied in the preparation of the audited financial statements of ABC Company Ltd.]. Reading the summary financial statements, therefore, is not a substitute for reading the audited financial statements of ABC Company Ltd.

Management’s Responsibility for the Summary Financial Statements

Management is responsible for the preparation of a summary of the audited financial statements in accordance with [Accounting Standards referred to in sub-section (3C) of section 211 of the Companies Act, 1956 (“the Act”) and accounting principles generally accepted in India].

Auditor’s Responsibility

Our responsibility is to express an opinion on the summary financial statements based on our procedures, which were conducted in accordance with Standard on Auditing (SA) 810, “Engagements to Report on Summary Financial Statements” issued by the Institute of Chartered Accountants of India.

Opinion

In our opinion, the summary financial statements derived from the audited financial statements of ABC Company Ltd. for the year ended March 31, 20X1 are a fair summary of those financial statements, in accordance with [Accounting Standards referred to in sub-section (3C) of section 211 of the Companies Act, 1956 (“the Act”) and accounting principles generally accepted in India].

For XYZ and Co.
Chartered Accountants
Firm’s Registration Number
Signature
(Name of the Member Signing the Audit Report)
(Designation10)
Membership Number

Place of Signature
Date

10 Partner or Proprietor, as the case may be.
Illustration 2:
Circumstances include the following:
- An unmodified opinion is expressed on the audited financial statements.
- Criteria are developed by management and adequately disclosed in Note X. The auditor has determined that the criteria are acceptable in the circumstances.

REPORT OF THE INDEPENDENT AUDITOR ON THE SUMMARY FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
[Appropriate Addressee]

The accompanying summary financial statements, which comprise the summary balance sheet as at March 31, 20X1, the summary statement of profit & loss, and summary cash flow statement for the year then ended, and related notes, are derived from the audited financial statements of ABC Company Ltd. for the year ended March 31, 20X1. We expressed an unmodified audit opinion on those financial statements in our report dated May 15, 20X111.

The summary financial statements do not contain all the disclosures required by the Accounting Standards referred to in sub-section (3C) of section 211 of the Companies Act, 1956 (“the Act”) [applied in the preparation of the audited financial statements of ABC Company Ltd.]. Reading the summary financial statements, therefore, is not a substitute for reading the audited financial statements of ABC Company Ltd.

Management’s Responsibility for the Summary Financial Statements
Management is responsible for the preparation of a summary of the audited financial statements on the basis described in Note X.

Auditor’s Responsibility
Our responsibility is to express an opinion on the summary financial statements based on our procedures, which were conducted in accordance with Standard on Auditing (SA) 810, “Engagements to Report on Summary Financial Statements” issued by the Institute of Chartered Accountants of India.

Opinion
In our opinion, the summary financial statements derived from the audited financial statements of ABC Company Ltd. for the year ended March 31, 20X1 are a fair summary of those financial statements, on the basis described in Note X.

For XYZ and Co.
Chartered Accountants
Firm’s Registration Number

Signature
(Name of the Member Signing the Audit Report)
(Designation12)
Membership Number

Place of Signature
Date

11 When the auditor’s report on the summary financial statements is dated later than the date of the auditor’s report on the audited financial statements from which it is derived, the following sentence is added to this paragraph: “Those financial statements, and the summary financial statements, do not reflect the effects of events that occurred subsequent to the date of our report on those financial statements”.
12 Partner or Proprietor, as the case may be.
Illustration 3:

Circumstances include the following:

- A qualified opinion is expressed on the audited financial statements.
- Criteria are developed by management and adequately disclosed in Note X. The auditor has determined that the criteria are acceptable in the circumstances.

REPORT OF THE INDEPENDENT AUDITOR ON THE SUMMARY FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

[Appropriate Addressee]

The accompanying summary financial statements, which comprise the summary balance sheet as at March 31, 20X1, the summary statement of profit & loss, and summary cash flow statement for the year then ended, and related notes, are derived from the audited financial statements of ABC Company Ltd. for the year ended March 31, 20X1. We expressed a qualified audit opinion on those financial statements in our report dated May 15, 20X1 (see below).

The summary financial statements do not contain all the disclosures required by the Accounting Standards referred to in sub-section (3C) of section 211 of the Companies Act, 1956 (“the Act”) [applied in the preparation of the audited financial statements of ABC Company Ltd.]. Reading the summary financial statements, therefore, is not a substitute for reading the audited financial statements of ABC Company Ltd.

Management’s Responsibility for the Summary Financial Statements

Management is responsible for the preparation of a summary of the audited financial statements on the basis described in Note X.

Auditor’s Responsibility

Our responsibility is to express an opinion on the summary financial statements based on our procedures, which were conducted in accordance with Standard on Auditing (SA) 810, “Engagements to Report on Summary Financial Statements” issued by the Institute of Chartered Accountants of India.

Opinion

In our opinion, the summary financial statements derived from the audited financial statements of ABC Company Ltd. for the year ended March 31, 20X1 are a fair summary of those financial statements, on the basis described in Note X. However, the summary financial statements are misstated to the equivalent extent as the audited financial statements of ABC Company Ltd. for the year ended March 31, 20X1.

The misstatement of the audited financial statements is described in our qualified audit opinion in our report dated May 15, 20X1. Our qualified audit opinion is based on the fact that the company’s inventories are carried in the balance sheet in those financial statements at Rs. XXX. Management has not stated the inventories at the lower of cost and net realisable value but has stated them solely at cost, which constitutes a departure from the Accounting Standard (AS) 2, “Valuation of Inventories”. The company’s records indicate that had management stated the inventories at the lower of cost and net realisable value, an amount of Rs. XXX would have been required to write the inventories down to their net realizable value. Accordingly, cost of sales would have been increased by Rs. XXX, and income tax, net income and shareholders’ equity would have been reduced by Rs. XXX, Rs. XXX and Rs. XXX, respectively. Our qualified audit opinion states that, except for the effects of the described matter, those financial statements give a true and fair view of the state.

13 When the auditor’s report on the summary financial statements is dated later than the date of the auditor’s report on the audited financial statements from which it is derived, the following sentence is added to this paragraph: “Those financial statements, and the summary financial statements, do not reflect the effects of events that occurred subsequent to the date of our report on those financial statements”.

© The Institute of Chartered Accountants of India
I.600 Auditing Pronouncements

of affairs of ABC Company Ltd. as of March 31, 20X1, and (of) its results of operations and its cash flows for
the year then ended in accordance with the Accounting Standards referred to in sub-section (3C) of section
211 of the Companies Act, 1956 ("the Act").

For XYZ and Co.
Chartered Accountants
Firm’s Registration Number

Signature
(Name of the Member Signing the Audit Report)
(Designation14)
Membership Number

Place of Signature
Date

Illustration 4:
Circumstances include the following:

• An adverse opinion is expressed on the audited financial statements.
• Criteria are developed by management and adequately disclosed in Note X. The auditor has
determined that the criteria are acceptable in the circumstances.

REPORT OF THE INDEPENDENT AUDITOR ON THE SUMMARY FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

[Appropriate Addressee]
The accompanying summary financial statements, which comprise the summary balance sheet as at March
31, 20X1, the summary statement of profit & loss, and summary cash flow statement for the year then ended,
and related notes, are derived from the audited financial statements of ABC Company Ltd. for the year ended
March 31, 20X115.

The summary financial statements do not contain all the disclosures required by the Accounting Standards
referred to in sub-section (3C) of section 211 of the Companies Act, 1956 ("the Act") [applied in the
preparation of the audited financial statements of ABC Company Ltd.]. Reading the summary financial
statements, therefore, is not a substitute for reading the audited financial statements of ABC Company Ltd.

Management’s Responsibility for the Summary Financial Statements
Management is responsible for the preparation of a summary of the audited financial statements on the basis
described in Note X.

Auditor’s Responsibility
Our responsibility is to express an opinion on the summary financial statements based on our procedures,
which were conducted in accordance with Standard on Auditing (SA) 810, “Engagements to Report on
Summary Financial Statements” issued by the Institute of Chartered Accountants of India.

14 Partner or Proprietor, as the case may be.
15 When the auditor’s report on the summary financial statements is dated later than the date of the auditor’s report on
the audited financial statements from which it is derived, the following sentence is added to this paragraph: “Those
financial statements, and the summary financial statements, do not reflect the effects of events that occurred subsequent
to the date of our report on those financial statements”.

© The Institute of Chartered Accountants of India
Denial of Opinion

In our report dated May 15, 20X1, we expressed an adverse audit opinion on the financial statements of ABC Company Ltd. for the year ended March 31, 20X1. The basis for our adverse audit opinion was [describe basis for adverse audit opinion]. Our adverse audit opinion stated that [describe adverse audit opinion].

Because of the significance of the matter discussed above, it is inappropriate to express an opinion on the summary financial statements of ABC Company Ltd. for the year ended March 31, 20X1.

For XYZ and Co.
Chartered Accountants
Firm’s Registration Number

Signature
(Name of the Member Signing the Audit Report)
(Designation16)
Membership Number

Place of Signature
Date

Illustration 5:
Circumstances include the following:
- An unmodified opinion is expressed on the audited financial statements.
- Established criteria for the preparation of summary financial statements exist.
- The auditor concludes that it is not possible to express an unmodified opinion on the summary financial statements.

REPORT OF THE INDEPENDENT AUDITOR ON THE SUMMARY FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

[Appropriate Addressee]

The accompanying summary financial statements, which comprise the summary balance sheet as at March 31, 20X1, the summary statement of profit & loss, and summary cash flow statement for the year then ended, and related notes, are derived from the audited financial statements of ABC Company Ltd. for the year ended March 31, 20X1. We expressed an unmodified audit opinion on those financial statements in our report dated May 15, 20X117.

The summary financial statements do not contain all the disclosures required by the Accounting Standards referred to in sub-section (3C) of section 211 of the Companies Act, 1956 (“the Act”) [applied in the preparation of the audited financial statements of ABC Company Ltd.]. Reading the summary financial statements, therefore, is not a substitute for reading the audited financial statements of ABC Company Ltd.

16 Partner or Proprietor, as the case may be.
17 When the auditor’s report on the summary financial statements is dated later than the date of the auditor’s report on the audited financial statements from which it is derived, the following sentence is added to this paragraph: “Those financial statements, and the summary financial statements, do not reflect the effects of events that occurred subsequent to the date of our report on those financial statements”.

© The Institute of Chartered Accountants of India
Management’s Responsibility for the Summary Audited Financial Statements
Management is responsible for the preparation of a summary of the audited financial statements in accordance with [Accounting Standards referred to in sub-section (3C) of section 211 of the Companies Act, 1956 (“the Act”) and accounting principles generally accepted in India].

Auditor’s Responsibility
Our responsibility is to express an opinion on the summary financial statements based on our procedures, which were conducted in accordance with Standard on Auditing (SA) 810, “Engagements to Report on Summary Financial Statements” issued by the Institute of Chartered Accountants of India.

Basis for Adverse Opinion
[Describe matter that caused the summary financial statements not to be a fair summary of the audited financial statements, in accordance with the applied criteria.]

Adverse Opinion
In our opinion, because of the significance of the matter discussed in the Basis for Adverse Opinion paragraph, the summary financial statements referred to above are not a fair summary of the audited financial statements of ABC Company Ltd. for the year ended March 31, 20X1, in accordance with [Accounting Standards referred to in sub-section (3C) of section 211 of the Companies Act, 1956 (“the Act”) and accounting principles generally accepted in India].